



OGC API - MAPS - PART 1: CORE

STANDARD
Implementation

DRAFT

Version: 1.0

Submission Date: 2024-02-15

Approval Date: 2029-03-30

Publication Date: 2029-03-30

Editor: Joan Masó, Jérôme Jacovella-St-Louis

Notice for Drafts: This document is not an OGC Standard. This document is distributed for review and comment. This document is subject to change without notice and may not be referred to as an OGC Standard.

Recipients of this document are invited to submit, with their comments, notification of any relevant patent rights of which they are aware and to provide supporting documentation.

License Agreement

Use of this document is subject to the license agreement at <https://www.ogc.org/license>

Suggested additions, changes and comments on this document are welcome and encouraged. Such suggestions may be submitted using the online change request form on OGC web site: <http://ogc.standardstracker.org/>

Copyright notice

Copyright © 2024 Open Geospatial Consortium

To obtain additional rights of use, visit <https://www.ogc.org/legal>

Note

Attention is drawn to the possibility that some of the elements of this document may be the subject of patent rights. The Open Geospatial Consortium shall not be held responsible for identifying any or all such patent rights.

Recipients of this document are requested to submit, with their comments, notification of any relevant patent claims or other intellectual property rights of which they may be aware that might be infringed by any implementation of the standard set forth in this document, and to provide supporting documentation.

CONTENTS

I.	ABSTRACT	xiv
II.	KEYWORDS	xiv
III.	PREFACE	xv
IV.	SECURITY CONSIDERATIONS	xvi
V.	SUBMITTING ORGANIZATIONS	xvii
VI.	SUBMITTERS	xvii
VII.	LEGACY	xvii
VIII.	ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	xviii
1.	SCOPE	2
2.	CONFORMANCE	4
2.1.	Requirements classes defining resources	4
2.2.	Requirements classes defining parameters	5
2.3.	Requirements classes defining origins	8
2.4.	Requirements classes defining representations	8
2.5.	Summary of conformance URLs	10
3.	NORMATIVE REFERENCES	13
4.	TERMS AND DEFINITIONS	16
5.	CONVENTIONS	21
5.1.	Identifiers	21
5.2.	Link relations	21
5.3.	Use of HTTPS	22
6.	OVERVIEW	24
6.1.	Introduction	24
6.2.	Map interoperability	25
6.3.	How to approach an implementation of an OGC API Standard	26
6.4.	OGC API – Maps within the OGC API family	28
6.5.	Description of the domain	30
6.6.	Subsetting and scaling the map	31

6.7. Available formats and map response expectations	35
7. REQUIREMENTS CLASS “CORE”	37
7.1. Overview	37
7.2. Map resource	38
7.3. Declaration of conformance classes	42
8. REQUIREMENTS CLASS “MAP TILESETS”	45
8.1. Overview	45
8.2. Link from data resource	46
8.3. Map Tileset	46
9. REQUIREMENTS CLASS “BACKGROUND”	49
9.1. Overview	49
9.2. Map operation	49
10. REQUIREMENTS CLASS “COLLECTION SELECTION”	56
10.1. Overview	56
10.2. Operation	56
10.3. Service Metadata	58
11. REQUIREMENTS CLASS “SCALING”	61
11.1. Overview	61
11.2. Map Operation	61
11.3. Scale and aspect ratio considerations (informative)	66
11.4. Service Metadata	68
12. REQUIREMENTS CLASS “DISPLAY RESOLUTION”	72
12.1. Overview	72
12.2. Map Operation	72
13. REQUIREMENTS CLASS “SPATIAL SUBSETTING”	76
13.1. Overview	76
13.2. CRS for subsetting	77
13.3. Subsetting coordinates	80
13.4. Response	85
13.5. Error conditions	86
14. REQUIREMENTS CLASS “DATE AND TIME”	89
14.1. Overview	89
14.2. Describing the temporal extent	89
14.3. datetime query parameter request and response	90
14.4. subset=time query parameter request and response	92
14.5. Actual date & time response header	94
14.6. Closest date & time permission	95
14.7. Response	95
14.8. Error conditions	95

15. REQUIREMENTS CLASS “GENERAL SUBSETTING”	98
15.1. Overview	98
15.2. Describing the extent of the additional dimensions	98
15.3. subset query parameter	99
15.4. Response	100
15.5. Error conditions	101
16. REQUIREMENTS CLASS “COORDINATE REFERENCE SYSTEM”	103
16.1. Overview	103
16.2. Operation	103
17. REQUIREMENTS CLASS “ORIENTATION”	107
17.1. Overview	107
17.2. Operation	107
18. REQUIREMENTS CLASS “CUSTOM PROJECTION CRS”	111
18.1. Overview	111
18.2. Operation	112
18.3. Available projections	115
19. REQUIREMENTS CLASS “COLLECTION MAP”	120
19.1. Overview	120
19.2. General	120
19.3. Geospatial data resources	121
19.4. Geospatial Data Resource Map	123
20. REQUIREMENTS CLASS “DATASET MAP”	126
20.1. Overview	126
20.2. General	126
20.3. Dataset API landing page	127
20.4. Dataset maps	129
21. REQUIREMENTS CLASS “STYLED MAPS”	132
21.1. Overview	132
21.2. Styled resources	132
21.3. Styled Resource Map	133
22. REQUIREMENTS CLASSES FOR ENCODINGS	136
22.1. Overview	136
22.2. Requirements Class “PNG”	136
22.3. Requirements Class “JPEG”	138
22.4. Requirements Class “JPEG XL”	139
22.5. Requirements Class “TIFF”	140
22.6. Requirements Class “SVG”	141
22.7. Requirements Class “HTML”	142

23. REQUIREMENTS CLASS “API OPERATIONS”	145
23.1. Overview	145
23.2. Web API description	145
24. REQUIREMENTS CLASS “CORS”	151
24.1. Overview	151
24.2. CORS for JavaScript clients	151
ANNEX A (NORMATIVE) CONFORMANCE CLASS ABSTRACT TEST SUITE	154
A.1. Conformance Class “Core”	154
A.2. Conformance Class “Map Tilesets”	156
A.3. Conformance Class “Background”	157
A.4. Conformance Class “Collection Selection”	161
A.5. Conformance Class “Scaling”	162
A.6. Conformance Class “Display Resolution”	165
A.7. Conformance Class “Spatial Subsetting”	167
A.8. Conformance Class “Date and Time”	173
A.9. Conformance Class “General Subsetting”	176
A.10. Conformance Class “Coordinate Reference System”	178
A.11. Conformance Class “Orientation”	179
A.12. Conformance Class “Custom Projection CRS”	180
A.13. Conformance Class “Collection Map”	185
A.14. Conformance Class “Dataset Map”	187
A.15. Conformance Class “Styled Map”	190
A.16. Conformance Class “PNG”	191
A.17. Conformance Class “JPEG”	192
A.18. Conformance Class “JPEG XL”	193
A.19. Conformance Class “TIFF”	194
A.20. Conformance Class “SVG”	194
A.21. Conformance Class “HTML”	195
A.22. Conformance Class “API Operations”	196
A.23. Conformance Class “CORS”	197
ANNEX B (INFORMATIVE) EXAMPLES	200
B.1. Default map	200
B.2. Collection description	201
B.3. Scaling and subsetting the map	203
B.4. Temporal subsetting	210
B.5. Styled maps	211
B.6. Additional dimensions	215
B.7. Coordinate Reference Systems	220
B.8. Calculations to infer appropriate dimensions	222
B.9. Calculations to infer appropriate bounding boxes	224
ANNEX C (INFORMATIVE) EVOLUTION FROM OGC WEB MAP SERVICE	228
C.1. From OGC Web Services to OGC Web APIs	228

C.2. Comparison between WMS and OGC API – Maps	229
ANNEX D (INFORMATIVE) BACKGROUND COLOR CODES	236
ANNEX E (INFORMATIVE) REVISION HISTORY	245
BIBLIOGRAPHY	248

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1 – Conformance class URLs	10
Table 2 – SEDAC GPWv4 Population Density, 2015 and Forecast NDFD, Surface (10m AGL) Wind Velocity (Barb, Knots)	25
Table 3 – Overview of resources and common direct links that can be used to define an OGC API – Maps implementation	27
Table 4 – Parameters for scaling and subsetting	31
Table 5 – Always valid requests (no scaling or subsetting parameter)	32
Table 6 – Always invalid parameter combinations	32
Table 7 – Parameter combinations for implementations supporting Subsetting, but not Scaling	32
Table 8 – Parameter combinations for implementations supporting Scaling, but not Subsetting	33
Table 9 – Parameter combinations for implementations supporting both Subsetting and Scaling	34
Table 10 – Common map resources in a geospatial API	37
Table 11 – API operation identifier suffixes	147
Table C.1 – Where some “service” metadata elements are specified	231
Table C.2 – Where some “layer” metadata elements are specified	232
Table D.1 – Named web color enumeration	236
Table E.1	245

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1	25
Figure 2	25
Figure 3 – Forecast NDFD wind speed on top of SEDAC Population density	26
Figure 4 – Resources and relations to them via links	27
Figure 5 – Example of a successful HTTP response body containing a JPEG image captured by LANDSAT in January 2020	40

Figure B.1 – Great Britain data served as a map without specifying any parameter. From: Ordnance Survey OS OpenMap - Local product. Contains OS data © Crown copyright and database right 2023.	201
Figure B.2 – The O2 dome peninsula (image captured from a plane by an editor of this standard while working on this annex)	203
Figure B.3 – Map of OS OpenMap - Local close to The O2 dome, specifying center at 51.5°N, 0°E. Contains OS data © Crown copyright and database right 2023.	204
Figure B.4 – Map of OS OpenMap - Local centered on The O2 dome using height=512	205
Figure B.5 – Map of OS OpenMap - Local centered on The O2 dome at 1:8000 scale using scale-denominator. Contains OS data © Crown copyright and database right 2023.	206
Figure B.6 – Map of OS OpenMap - Local centered on The O2 dome at 1:12,000 scale using scale-denominator. Contains OS data © Crown copyright and database right 2023.	206
Figure B.7 – Map of OS OpenMap - Local centered on The O2 dome at 1:20,000 scale using scale-denominator. Contains OS data © Crown copyright and database right 2023.	207
Figure B.8 – Map of OS OpenMap - Local centered on The O2 dome at 1:30,000 scale using scale-denominator. Contains OS data © Crown copyright and database right 2023.	207
Figure B.9 – Map of OS OpenMap - Local centered on The O2 dome at 1:50,000 scale using scale-denominator. Contains OS data © Crown copyright and database right 2023.	208
Figure B.10 – Wider 1024x512 map of OS OpenMap - Local centered on the O2 dome at 1:50,000 scale. Contains OS data © Crown copyright and database right 2023.	209
Figure B.11 – A map of Sentinel-2 data from April 1st, 2022 of the same area. From: Copernicus SENTINEL-2 operated by ESA.	210
Figure B.12 – A map of a scene classification layer style for Sentinel-2 data from April 1st, 2022 of London. From: Copernicus SENTINEL-2 operated by ESA.	211
Figure B.13 – A map of an Enhanced Vegetation Index (EVI) style for Sentinel-2 data from April 1st, 2022 of London. From: Copernicus SENTINEL-2 operated by ESA.	212
Figure B.14 – Styled map of High Resolution DTM from Natural Resources Canada (style1)	213
Figure B.15 – Styled map of High Resolution DTM from Natural Resources Canada, showing alternative style2	214
Figure B.16 – A map of CMIP5 temperature data of the world at 500 hPa on July 3rd, 2023 (from Copernicus climate data store)	215
Figure B.17 – A map of CMIP5 temperature data of the world at 850 hPa on July 3rd, 2023 (from Copernicus climate data store)	216
Figure B.18 – A map of ERA5 reanalysis data showing Relative Humidity of the whole world at 500 hPa on April 6th, 2023 at 23:00:00 UTC (from Copernicus climate data store)	217
Figure B.19 – A map of ERA5 reanalysis data showing Relative Humidity of the whole world at 975 hPa on April 6th, 2023 at 23:00:00 UTC (from Copernicus climate data store)	217
Figure B.20 – Map of NASA Earth Observatory's Blue Marble Next Generation (2004), in Plate Carrée (EPSG:4326) output crs	220
Figure B.21 – Map of NASA Earth Observatory's Blue Marble Next Generation (2004), using World Mercator (EPSG:3395) output crs	221

LIST OF RECOMMENDATIONS

REQUIREMENTS CLASS 1: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'CORE'	37
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 2: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'MAP TILESETS'	45
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 3: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'BACKGROUND'	49
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 4: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'COLLECTION SELECTION'	56
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 5: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'SCALING'	61
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 6: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'DISPLAY RESOLUTION'	72
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 7: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'SPATIAL SUBSETTING'	76
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 8: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'DATE AND TIME'	89
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 9: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'GENERAL SUBSETTING'	98
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 10: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'COORDINATE REFERENCE SYSTEM'	
.....	103
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 11: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'ORIENTATION'	107
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 12: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'CUSTOM PROJECTION CRS'	111
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 13: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'COLLECTION MAP'	120
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 14: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'DATASET MAP'	126
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 15: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'STYLED MAPS'	132
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 16: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'PNG'	137
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 17: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'JPEG'	138
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 18: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'JPEG XL'	139
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 19: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'TIFF'	140
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 20: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'SVG'	142
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 21: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'HTML'	143
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 22: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'API OPERATIONS'	145
REQUIREMENTS CLASS 23: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'CORS'	151
REQUIREMENT 1	38
REQUIREMENT 2	39
REQUIREMENT 3	42
REQUIREMENT 4	46
REQUIREMENT 5	47
REQUIREMENT 6	50
REQUIREMENT 7	51

REQUIREMENT 8	52
REQUIREMENT 9	53
REQUIREMENT 10	53
REQUIREMENT 11	57
REQUIREMENT 12	58
REQUIREMENT 13	62
REQUIREMENT 14	62
REQUIREMENT 15	64
REQUIREMENT 16	73
REQUIREMENT 17	74
REQUIREMENT 18	77
REQUIREMENT 19	78
REQUIREMENT 20	79
REQUIREMENT 21	80
REQUIREMENT 22	82
REQUIREMENT 23	83
REQUIREMENT 24	84
REQUIREMENT 25	85
REQUIREMENT 26	86
REQUIREMENT 27	90
REQUIREMENT 28	91
REQUIREMENT 29	92
REQUIREMENT 30	93
REQUIREMENT 31	94
REQUIREMENT 32	95
REQUIREMENT 33	99
REQUIREMENT 34	99
REQUIREMENT 35	104
REQUIREMENT 36	105
REQUIREMENT 37	107
REQUIREMENT 38	108
REQUIREMENT 39	112
REQUIREMENT 40	112

REQUIREMENT 41	113
REQUIREMENT 42	113
REQUIREMENT 43	114
REQUIREMENT 44	115
REQUIREMENT 45	116
REQUIREMENT 46	121
REQUIREMENT 47	122
REQUIREMENT 48	124
REQUIREMENT 49	127
REQUIREMENT 50	127
REQUIREMENT 51	128
REQUIREMENT 52	129
REQUIREMENT 53	132
REQUIREMENT 54	133
REQUIREMENT 55	137
REQUIREMENT 56	138
REQUIREMENT 57	140
REQUIREMENT 58	141
REQUIREMENT 59	142
REQUIREMENT 60	143
REQUIREMENT 61	146
REQUIREMENT 62	147
REQUIREMENT 63	151
RECOMMENDATION 1	40
RECOMMENDATION 2	41
RECOMMENDATION 3	41
RECOMMENDATION 4	41
RECOMMENDATION 5	41
RECOMMENDATION 6	50
RECOMMENDATION 7	59
RECOMMENDATION 8	64
RECOMMENDATION 9	65
RECOMMENDATION 10	65

RECOMMENDATION 11	68
RECOMMENDATION 12	84
RECOMMENDATION 13	86
RECOMMENDATION 14	94
RECOMMENDATION 15	120
RECOMMENDATION 16	122
RECOMMENDATION 17	128
RECOMMENDATION 18	129
RECOMMENDATION 19	141
RECOMMENDATION 20	143
PERMISSION 1	50
PERMISSION 2	57
PERMISSION 3	80
PERMISSION 4	86
PERMISSION 5	95
PERMISSION 6	104
PERMISSION 7	122
PERMISSION 8	130
PERMISSION 9	142
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.1	154
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.2	156
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.3	158
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.4	161
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.5	162
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.6	165
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.7	167
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.8	173
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.9	176
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.10	178
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.11	179
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.12	180
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.13	185
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.14	187

CONFORMANCE CLASS A.15	190
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.16	191
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.17	192
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.18	193
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.19	194
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.20	195
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.21	195
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.22	196
CONFORMANCE CLASS A.23	198

ABSTRACT

The OGC API – *Maps* – Part 1: Core Standard defines a Web API for requesting maps over the Web. A *map* is a portrayal of geographic information as a digital representation suitable for display on a rendering device (adapted from [OGC 06-042/ISO 19128 OpenGIS® Web Map Server \(WMS\) Implementation Specification](#)). Implementations of the OGC API – *Maps* Standard are designed for a client to easily:

- Request a visual representation of one or more geospatial data layers in different styles;
- Select by area, time and resolution of interest;
- Change parameters such as the background color and coordinate reference systems.

A server that implements OGC API – *Maps* provides information about what maps are offered. OGC API – *Maps* addresses use cases similar to those addressed by the [OGC 06-042/ISO 19128 OpenGIS® Web Map Server \(WMS\) Implementation Specification](#) Standard.

KEYWORDS

The following are keywords to be used by search engines and document catalogues.

ogcdoc, OGC document, API, openapi, maps

This document defines the OGC API – *Maps* – Part 1: Core Standard. Suggested additions, changes and comments on this standard are welcome and encouraged. Such suggestions may be submitted as an issue on the [OGC API – Maps GitHub repository](#).

SECURITY CONSIDERATIONS

Part 1 of the [OGC API – Maps](#) Standard only defines HTTP GET operations. As such the security considerations are limited to those applicable to a “read only” service. However, implementations of OGC API – Maps have to process resource paths and query parameters in a way that cannot be used by a client to inject malicious queries that makes available unforeseen data or even force the server to perform unwanted or dangerous actions. The following paragraphs enumerate some security considerations.

Due to the flexibility in generating maps, implementations of the OGC API – Maps Standard that are not optimized can easily encounter requests that take some time to resolve. If several of these requests are processed simultaneously, the server can become slow or unresponsive. Servers should take advantage of space partitioning structures that guarantee a deterministic maximum amount of data to process, such as the 2D Tile Matrix Set data structure (used in Cloud Optimized GeoTIFF, OGC API – Tiles, GeoPackage, etc.), which results in applying cartographic generalization for regions covering a larger area. Servers should also set and apply reasonable limits (e.g., maximum width, etc.) to prevent Denial of Service attacks.

Some OGC API – Maps deployments may assign different roles to different users that may result in accessing different collections or geographical areas that can be represented as maps. The access control can be described in the OpenAPI definition as discussed in OGC API – Common (https://docs.ogc.org/is/19-072/19-072.html#rc_oas30-security). Servers should take care that all resources in all representations and ways they can be requested (e.g., adding query parameters) are managed consistently.

Another security consideration is that maps generated by an endpoint of an OGC API – Maps implementation may be positionally incorrect and potentially guide users to wrong locations. One possible way this situation could happen is the manipulation by a malicious actor of a projection library installed on a server deployment.

Using HTTPS queries is preferred to using HTTP. The obvious reason is the map response returned by the endpoint of the OGC API – Maps implementation should be only accessible to the requesting user. Another reason is related to the public accessibility of the request itself. A request to the endpoint can reveal geographical extents that might be associated with private or sensitive information. For instance, users commonly visit “home” or “work” or “target places” (such as holiday destinations or churches). These requests can be used to predict personal or private activities.

V

SUBMITTING ORGANIZATIONS

The following organizations submitted this Document to the Open Geospatial Consortium (OGC):

- Universitat Autònoma de Barcelona (CREAF)
- US Army Geospatial Center
- Ecere Corporation
- Esri

VI

SUBMITTERS

All questions regarding this submission should be directed to the editor or the submitters:

NAME	AFFILIATION
Joan Masó (<i>editor</i>)	Universitat Autònoma de Barcelona (CREAF)
Jérôme Jacovella-St-Louis (<i>editor</i>)	Ecere Corporation
Jeff Harrison	US Army Geospatial Center
Satish Sankaran	Esri

VII

LEGACY

The requirements and conformance classes defined in the OGC API – Maps – Part 1: Core Standard are grounded in the work done by many OGC Members in the different versions of the OGC Web Map Service (WMS) Standard. In particular, the work of Jean-François (Jeff) de La Beaujardière was instrumental in the consolidation of WMS. He participated in the original OGC Testbeds that resulted in WMS 1.0, back in April 2000. He became the editor of all subsequent versions, including WMS 1.1, WMS 1.1.1, WMS 1.3, and ISO 19128:2005.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Key work for crafting this OGC Standard was undertaken in the Open-Earth-Monitor Cyberinfrastructure (OEMC) project (<https://earthmonitor.org/>). The OEMC Project received funding from the European Union's Horizon Europe research and innovation program under grant agreement number 101059548. Another project that provided key research is the All Data 4 Green Deal – An Integrated, FAIR Approach for the Common European Data Space (AD4GD) project (<https://www.ad4gd.eu/>). This project was co-funded by the European Union's Horizon Europe research and innovation program under grant agreement number 101061001 as well as the United Kingdom and Switzerland. Another project that provided key research on applying OGC API Standards in the European digital twin of the ocean is the Integrated Digital Framework for Comprehensive Maritime Data and Information Services (ILIAD) project (<https://ocean-twin.eu/>). The ILIAD project received funding from the European Union's Horizon Europe research and innovation program under grant agreement number 101037643.

Initial implementations and an Engineering Report constituting the first draft of this Standard were also produced thanks to funding from OGC Testbed 15. The editors also thank Natural Resources Canada for progress on this Standard achieved as part of GeoConnections 2020-2021 funded project number GNS20-21IFP02 (*Modular OGC API Workflows*).

1

SCOPE

SCOPE

The OGC API – *Maps* – Part 1: Core Standard (hereafter termed the *Maps API*) specifies operations to distribute maps and map tiles in a manner independent of the underlying data store. The Maps API can be described and documented using the [OpenAPI](#) specification and specifies resources for discovering and retrieving maps from a Web API.

Specifically, this OGC API – *Maps* Standard supports the following:

- Discovery operations that allow an implementation instance of the Maps API Standard to be interrogated to determine capabilities and to retrieve information about this distribution of maps. This information includes the API definition (if also implementing [OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core](#)), as well as metadata about the data layers provided and the Coordinate Reference System(s) supported by the Web API implementation instance.
- Retrieval operations that enable client applications to retrieve a map, using a default or pre-defined style, for an arbitrary geospatial resource, a dataset representing the full content available via the Maps API endpoint, or an individual collection of geospatial data representing part of the dataset.
- Parameters for specifying the background and transparency of the map.
- Parameters for specifying the scale of the map.
- A parameter for specifying the pixel size of the device or medium on which the map is intended to be displayed.
- Parameters for retrieving only a subset of the map.
- A parameter for specifying a particular orientation for the map.
- Parameters for specifying a Coordinate Reference System (CRS) for the map by reference or using a projection operation method (as defined by [OGC 18-005r4 Abstract Specification Topic 2 Referencing by Coordinates](#)), parameters for that method and a datum.



2

CONFORMANCE

CONFORMANCE

Conformance with this standard shall be checked using all the relevant tests specified in Annex A (normative) of this document if the respective conformance URLs listed in Table 1 are present in the conformance response. The framework, concepts, and methodology for testing, and the criteria to be achieved to claim conformance are specified in the [OGC Compliance Testing Policies and Procedures](#) and the [OGC Compliance Testing web site](#).

The standardization targets of all conformance classes are “Web APIs”.

The OGC API – Maps – Part 1: Core Standard defines twenty-three (**23**) conformance classes, each corresponding to one requirements class.

The core conformance class is the only mandatory class. All other conformance classes are optional and depend on the *core*.

These classes act as building blocks that should be implemented in combination with other more fundamental classes that provide support for documenting and formally describing a Web API (e.g., OpenAPI), listing supported conformance classes and listing available geospatial resources. Possible alternatives for these fundamental classes are OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core, OGC API – Features Part 1: Core or any other non-OGC classes that provide equivalent or alternative functionality.

The OGC API – Maps – Part 1: Core Standard is intended to define a minimal set of functions for a useful API for fine-grained access to retrieve maps. Additional classes may be specified in future parts of the OGC API – Maps series to add more capabilities or as vendor-specific extensions.

2.1. Requirements classes defining resources

Requirements Class “Core” (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core>)

The *Maps API Core* specifies requirements that any Web API implementation instance of the Maps API Standard must implement to claim conformance with the OGC API – Maps – Part 1: Core Standard. This requirements class defines an operation to retrieve a map but does not define any query parameters to customize the map.

An example request is below:

```
.../map
```

Requirements Class “Map Tilesets” (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/tilesets>)

The *map tilesets* requirements class defines a mechanism to list available map tilesets supported by the Web API instance and a mechanism for retrieving tiles of the map representation. The

terms 'tile' and 'tile set' (alias tileset) are defined in the OGC Two Dimensional Tile Matrix Set Standard ([OGC 17-083r4](#)).

Example requests are below:

```
.../map/tiles  
.../map/tiles/WorldCRS84Quad  
.../map/tiles/WorldCRS84Quad/0/0/0
```

NOTE 1: Despite the use of .../map/tiles path templates in these examples which may become common in implementations of OGC API – Maps, these exact paths are only examples and are not required by OGC API – Tiles or by this *Maps API* Standard. Other paths are possible provided they are correctly described in the API description of the Web API and the links between resources.

NOTE 2: The “Custom Projection CRS” requirements class is not included in this sub-section because its primary focus is not defining resources, but the Custom Projection requirements class also specifies a /projectionsAndDatums resource listing values available for the parameters it defines.

2.2. Requirements classes defining parameters

These requirements classes of the *Maps API* define parameters that can be used together with any map resource.

NOTE 1: In the effort to make OGC API Standards more consistent, some parts of these requirements classes are expected to be imported by a future part of OGC API – Common or be registered in the building blocks registry. A future revision of OGC API – Maps could reference them and ensure consistency with the relevant common requirements.

Requirements Class “Background” (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/background>)

The *background* requirements class defines how to request two particular background colors (bgcolor and void-color) and to specify whether areas of the map with no data or where the CRS / projection is invalid are transparent (using transparent and void-transparent).

Example requests are below:

```
.../map?bgcolor=0x001122&transparent=false&void-transparent=true
```

Requirements Class “Collection Selection” (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/collections-selection>)

The *collection selection* requirements class defines how to list specific geospatial data collection resources from which to retrieve maps.

An example request is below:

```
.../map?collections=buildings,roads,...
```

Requirements Class “Scaling” (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/scaling>)

The *scaling* requirements class defines how to retrieve a resampled map. This is done by specifying a width and/or height parameter (in pixels), or a scale-denominator parameter.

Example requests are below:

```
.../map?width=1024&height=512  
.../map?scale-denominator=20000
```

NOTE 2: When implementing both this *scaling* requirements class and the *spatial subsetting* requirements class, the width and height can only be used for specifying the scale when a bbox or subset is also used for spatial subsetting, as otherwise they take on a subsetting role. When neither bbox nor subset is used for spatial subsetting, the scale-denominator parameter must be used to specify the scale.

Requirements Class “Display Resolution” (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/display-resolution>) The *display resolution* requirements class defines how to specify the resolution of the display (the size of a pixel in millimeters) using the mm-per-pixel parameter at which the map will be visualized so as to properly interpret scale denominators and apply scale-dependent symbology rules.

An example request is below:

```
.../map?mm-per-pixel=0.14
```

Requirements Class “Spatial Subsetting” (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/spatial-subsetting>) The *spatial subsetting* requirements class defines how to retrieve a spatial subset of a map using either a bbox or subset parameter.

Example subsetting requests using bounding box are below:

```
.../map?bbox=120,30,180,90  
.../map?bbox-crs=[EPSG:3857]&bbox=500000,430000,1000000,1000000
```

Example subsetting requests using subset are below:

```
.../map?subset=Lat(30:90),Lon(120:180)  
.../map?subset-crs=[EPSG:3857]&subset=X(500000:1000000),Y(430000:1000000)
```

This class also specifies how to retrieve a subset of a map using a center parameter, together with width and height parameters.

NOTE 3: When implementing both this *spatial subsetting* requirements class and the *scaling* requirements class, the width and height can only be used for specifying the scale when a bbox or subset is also used for spatial subsetting, as otherwise they take on a subsetting role. When neither bbox nor subset is used for spatial subsetting, the scale-denominator parameter must be used to specify the scale.

Example subsetting requests using center point and dimensions:

```
.../map?center=-120,60&width=1024&height=512  
.../map?center-crs=[EPSG:3857]&center=750000,700000&width=1024&height=512
```

Requirements Class “Date and Time” (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/datetime>) The *temporal subsetting* requirements class specifies how to request a temporal subset of the data using the `datetime` parameter, or the `subset` parameter for the time dimension.

Example requests are below:

```
.../map?datetime=2018-02-12T23:20:52Z  
.../map?subset=time("2018-02-12T23:20:52Z")
```

Requirements Class “General Subsetting” (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/general-subsetting>) The *general subsetting* requirements class specifies how to request a subset of dimensions of the data besides the spatial and temporal dimensions using the `subset` parameter. This parameter also implies adopting a consistent way to describe all dimensions of the data in the collection’s extent description.

An example request is below:

```
.../map?subset=atm_pressure_hpa(500)
```

Requirements Class “Coordinate Reference System” (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/crs>)

The *Coordinate Reference System* requirements class defines how to specify the output Coordinate Reference System (CRS) of the map by referencing a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) or compact URI (CURIE) of a CRS definition.

An example request is below:

```
.../map?crs=[EPSG:3031]
```

NOTE 4: Every time that a URI to a CRS is required or recommended a CURIE equivalent is also valid. A CURIE `{authority}[-{objectType}]:{id}` would map to the following OGC URI: <https://www.opengis.net/def/{objectType}/{authority}/0/{id}>. If `-{objectType}` is missing, the default object type is `crs`.

Requirements Class “Orientation” (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/orientation>) The *orientation* requirements class defines how to specify an angle (expressed in degrees) for re-orienting how the map is displayed (orientation).

An example orientation request is below:

```
.../map?orientation=40
```

Requirements Class “Custom Projection CRS” (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/projection>) The *custom projection CRS* requirements class defines how to specify a custom CRS through a projection, including the coordinate operation method (`crs-proj-method`) and associated parameters (`crs-proj-params`), as well as a datum (`crs-datum`). This class also defines a `crs-proj-center` parameter for facilitating the selection of the most likely parameters to center the projection on an area of interest.

An example of an orthographic projection request is below:

```
.../map?  
crs-proj-method=[epsg-method:9840]&  
crs-proj-center=Lat(40),Lon(-120)
```

An example of a Lambert Conic Conformal projection with two standard parallels request is below:

```
.../map?  
crs-proj-method=[epsg-method:9802]&  
crs-proj-params=[epsg-parameter:8823](40),[epsg-parameter:8824](90)&  
crs-datum=[epsg-datum:6230]
```

NOTE 5: This “Custom Projection CRS” requirements class also defines a `/projectionsAndDatums` resource listing values available for the parameters it defines.

2.3. Requirements classes defining origins

Requirements Class “Collection Map” (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/collection-map>)

The *collection map* requirements class specifies how to retrieve maps from a specific geospatial data resource.

An example request is below:

```
/collections/buildings/map
```

Requirements Class “Dataset Map” (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/dataset-map>)

The *dataset map* requirements class specifies how to retrieve maps for a whole dataset potentially made up of multiple geospatial data resources. Any Web API implementing this requirements class must support **dataset** maps following this OGC API – Maps – Part 1: Core Standard. Dataset maps may combine content from multiple geospatial resources, regardless of whether those are available separately (as maps or otherwise).

An example request is below:

```
/map
```

Requirements Class “Styled Maps” (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/styled-map>)

The *styled map* requirements class specifies how to retrieve maps for a styled resource.

An example request is below:

```
.../styles/night/map
```

2.4. Requirements classes defining representations

Requirements Classes for Encodings

The *Maps API* Standard does not mandate a specific encoding or format for representing maps. Requirements classes are provided for the following common map formats.

PNG (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/png>)

Media type: image/png

JPEG (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/jpeg>)

Media type: image/jpeg

JPEG XL (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/jpegxl>)

Media type: image/jxl

TIFF (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/tiff>)

Media type: image/tiff

SVG (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/svg>)

Media type: image/svg+xml

HTML (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/html>)

Media type: text/html

The Standard remains flexible and extensible for using other formats that users and providers might need through HTTP content negotiation.

That said, this Standard includes recommendations to support, where practical, HTML.

Requirements Class “API Operations” (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/api-operations>)

The *API Operations* requirements class specifies requirements to fully describe the *Maps API* operations and use specific operation identifier suffixes when providing an API definition. This requirements class is intended to be used in conjunction with other conformance classes for a specific API definition language and/or version, such as the OpenAPI 3.0 requirements class defined in OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core, or another eventual requirements class for OpenAPI 3.1.

Requirements Class “CORS” (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/cors>)

The CORS requirements class specifies a requirement to implement CORS to support JavaScript clients (e.g. Web Browser applications) from a domain different from the OGC API – Maps endpoint.

All requirements classes and conformance classes described in this Standard are owned by the Standard(s) identified.

2.5. Summary of conformance URIs

Table 1 – Conformance class URIs

CORRESPONDING REQUIREMENTS CLASS	CONFORMANCE CLASS URI
Core	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core
Map Tilesets	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/tilesets
Background	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/background
Collection Selection	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/collections-selection
Scaling	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/scaling
Display Resolution	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/display-resolution
Spatial Subsetting	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/spatial-subsetting
Date and Time	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/datetime
General Subsetting	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/general-subsetting
Coordinate Reference System	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/crs
Orientation	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/orientation
Custom Projection CRS	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/projection
Collection Map	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/collection-map
Dataset Map	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/dataset-map
Styled Maps	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/styled-map
PNG	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/png
JPEG	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/jpeg
JPEG XL	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/jpegxl

CORRESPONDING REQUIREMENTS CLASS	CONFORMANCE CLASS URI
TIFF	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/tiff
SVG	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/svg
HTML	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/html
API Operations	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/api-operations
CORS	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/cors

3

NORMATIVE REFERENCES

NORMATIVE REFERENCES

The following documents are referred to in the text in such a way that some or all of their content constitutes requirements of this document. For dated references, only the edition cited applies. For undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

G. Klyne, C. Newman: IETF RFC 3339, *Date and Time on the Internet: Timestamps*. RFC Publisher (2002). <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc3339>.

Charles Heazel: OGC 19-072, *OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core*. Open Geospatial Consortium (2023). <http://www.opengis.net/doc/is/ogcapi-common-1/1.0.0>.

Clemens Portele, Panagiotis (Peter) A. Vretanos, Charles Heazel: OGC 17-069r4, *OGC API – Features – Part 1: Core corrigendum*. Open Geospatial Consortium (2022). <http://www.opengis.net/doc/IS/ogcapi-features-1/1.0.1>.

Joan Masó, Jérôme Jacovella-St-Louis: OGC 20-057, *OGC API – Tiles – Part 1: Core*. Open Geospatial Consortium (2022). <http://www.opengis.net/doc/IS/ogcapi-tiles-1/1.0.0>.

Joan Masó, Jérôme Jacovella-St-Louis: OGC 17-083r4, *OGC Two Dimensional Tile Matrix Set and Tile Set Metadata*. Open Geospatial Consortium (2022). <http://www.opengis.net/doc/IS/tms/2.0.0>.

M. Nottingham: IETF RFC 8288, *Web Linking*. RFC Publisher (2017). <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc8288>.

ISO/IEC: ISO/IEC 18181-1:2024, *Information technology – JPEG XL image coding system – Part 1: Core coding system*. International Organization for Standardization, International Electrotechnical Commission, Geneva (2024). <https://www.iso.org/standard/85066.html>.

ISO/IEC: ISO/IEC 18181-2:2024, *Information technology – JPEG XL image coding system – Part 2: File format*. International Organization for Standardization, International Electrotechnical Commission, Geneva (2024). <https://www.iso.org/standard/85253.html>.

ISO/IEC: ISO/IEC 10918-1, *Information technology – Digital compression and coding of continuous-tone still images: Requirements and guidelines*. International Organization for Standardization, International Electrotechnical Commission, Geneva <https://www.iso.org/standard/18902.html>.

ISO/IEC: ISO/IEC 15948, *Information technology – Computer graphics and image processing – Portable Network Graphics (PNG): Functional specification*. International Organization for Standardization, International Electrotechnical Commission, Geneva <https://www.iso.org/standard/29581.html>.

Open API Initiative: OpenAPI Specification 3.0.3, <https://github.com/OAI/OpenAPI-Specification/blob/master/versions/3.0.3.md>

Adobe development association: TIFF Revision 6.0 Final – June 3, (1992) <https://www.itu.int/itudoc/itu-t/com16/tiff-fx/docs/tiff6.pdf>

W3C: Scalable Vector Graphics (SVG) v2. W3C Candidate Recommendation – October, (2018) <https://www.w3.org/TR/SVG2/>

WHATWG: HTML, Living Standard [online, viewed 2020-03-16]. Available at <https://html.spec.whatwg.org/>

NOTE: OGC API – *Features – Part 1: Core* has been included as a temporary normative reference. When OGC API – *Common – Part 2: Geospatial data* is released, the latter should replace OGC API – *Features – Part 1: Core* as a normative reference in a future version of OGC API – *Maps – Part 1: Core*.

4

TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

This document uses the terms defined in [OGC Policy Directive 49](#), which is based on the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, Rules for the structure and drafting of International Standards. In particular, the word “shall” (not “must”) is the verb form used to indicate a requirement to be strictly followed to conform to this document and OGC documents do not use the equivalent phrases in the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2.

This document also uses terms defined in the OGC Standard for Modular specifications ([OGC 08-131r3](#)), also known as the ‘ModSpec’. The definitions of terms such as standard, specification, requirement, and conformance test are provided in the ModSpec.

For the purposes of this document, the following additional terms and definitions apply.

4.1. coordinate reference system

coordinate system that is related to the real world by a datum (source: ISO 19111)

4.2. coordinate system

set of mathematical rules for specifying how coordinates are to be assigned to points (source: ISO 19111)

4.3. data cube (or datacube)

a multi-dimensional (“n-D”) array of values. Sometimes, the term *data cube* is applied in contexts where these arrays are massively larger than the hosting computer’s main memory; examples include multi-terabyte/petabyte data warehouses and time series of image data.

4.4. geographic information

information concerning phenomena implicitly or explicitly associated with a location relative to the Earth (source: ISO 19101)

4.5. height

1. vertical elevation of an object in the real world above a reference point (height above the reference ellipsoid for geographic CRS such as [OGC:CRS84h] and [EPSG:4979]).
2. size, in pixels, of a viewport along its vertical axis

Note 1 to entry: Both the *spatial subsetting* and *scaling* requirements classes make use of the height query parameter. In both cases, the parameter refers to the height of the image in pixels, but the effect of specifying a fixed value for the parameter is different in each case (selecting the portion of the map to return in the image vs. resampling the map to the requested image size).

4.6. map

portrayal of geographic information as a digital representation suitable for display on a rendering device (adapted from OGC 06-042)

4.7. map background

areas of the map having no data to represent. They are commonly left transparent or filled with a background color

4.8. portrayal

presentation of information to humans (source: ISO 19117)

4.9. rendering device

medium or apparatus on which the map being retrieved will be displayed, whether temporarily (e.g., computer screen) or permanently (e.g., paper).

4.10. scale

ratio between the size of a map shown in the rendering device (commonly expressed in mm or inches) and the equivalent geographic bounding box of a map in the reality (commonly expressed in meters or miles). Commonly, the ratio is expressed as a fraction, where 1 unit in the rendering device is equivalent to n units in the reality (in the same units of measure). In this case, n is called a scale denominator.

4.11. viewport

portion of a rendering device where information is being visualized

Note 1 to entry: For the purpose of this document, the viewport refers to the portion of the map resource response, such as a digital image, where the actual geospatial content of the map is rendered. It excludes any outside margin portions of the image where layout elements such as titles or a legend may be included, as could be defined by an extension. For a two-dimensional viewport, its dimensions are named horizontal and vertical, corresponding to the width and height of the viewport, respectively.

4.12. width

size, in pixels, of a viewport along its horizontal axis

Note 1 to entry: Both the *spatial subsetting* and *scaling* requirements classes make use of the width query parameter. In both cases, the parameter refers to the width of the viewport in pixels, but the effect of specifying a fixed value for the parameter is different in each case (selecting the portion of the map to return in the image vs. resampling the map to the requested image size).

4.13. Web API

An Application Programming Interface (API) using an architectural style that is founded on the technologies of the Web (source: OGC 17-069r3)

Note 1 to entry: See [Best Practice 24: Use Web Standards as the foundation of APIs \(W3C Data on the Web Best Practices\)](#) for more detail.



5

CONVENTIONS

CONVENTIONS

This section provides details of conventions used in this document.

5.1. Identifiers

The normative provisions in this standard are denoted by the URI <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0>.

All requirements and conformance tests that appear in this document are denoted by partial URIs which are relative to this base.

5.2. Link relations

To express relationships between resources, [RFC 8288 \(Web Linking\)](#) is used.

Note that the CURIE based on the pattern [ogc-rel:<relation>] is also considered equivalent. For example, [ogc-rel:map] corresponds to <https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/map>.

The following IANA link relation types are used in this document:

- **alternate**: Refers to a substitute for this context.
- **self**: Conveys an identifier for the link's context.
- **item**: The target IRI points to a resource that is a member of the collection represented by the context IRI.
- **preview**: Refers to a resource that provides a preview of the link's context. In the context of this specification, it used to link to a low-resolution preview of the map.
- **service-desc**: Identifies service description for the context that is primarily intended for consumption by machines (Web API definitions are considered service descriptions).
- **service-doc**: Identifies service documentation for the context that is primarily intended for human consumption.
- **stylesheet**: Refers to a stylesheet. In the context of this specification, it refers to a cartographic stylesheet, as provided by OGC API – Styles.

In addition, the following link relation type is used for which no applicable registered link relation type could be identified:

- [**https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/map**](https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/map): Refers to a resource that is map representation of another geospatial resource (e.g., a collection).
- [**https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/legend**](https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/legend): Refers to a legend for the map.

Used in combination with OGC API – *Tiles* – Part 1: Core, other link relation types will be used, including:

- [**https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/tilesets-map**](https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/tilesets-map): The target IRI points to a resource that describes how to provide tile sets of the context resource in map format.

Used in combination with OGC API – *Styles*, other link relation types will be used, including:

- [**https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/styles**](https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/styles): The target IRI points to a resource that describes how to provide styles of the context resource that internally can contain links to maps.

Used in combination with OGC API – *Features* – Part 1: Core or OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core, other link relation types will be used, including:

- [**https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/conformance**](https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/conformance): Refers to a resource that identifies the specifications that the link's context conforms to.

Used in combination with OGC API – *Features* – Part 1: Core or OGC API – Common – Part 2: *Geospatial data*, other link relation types will be used, including:

- [**https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/data**](https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/data): Refers to the list of collections available for a dataset.

Each resource representation includes an array of links. Implementations are free to add additional links for all resources provided by the Web API implementing Maps API requirement(s).

5.3. Use of HTTPS

For simplicity, the Maps API only refers to the HTTP protocol. This is not meant to exclude the use of HTTPS and simply is a shorthand notation for “HTTP or HTTPS.” Following the recent push towards enhancing web security, public facing web servers are expected to use [**HTTPS**](#) rather than [**HTTP**](#). In the context of Maps API Standard, use of [**HTTPS**](#) provides a layer of security to prevent leaking of information related to users requesting map data for a particular geographical area, which may be private or sensitive in nature (for example, their own location, or the location of endangered species).



6

OVERVIEW

6.1. Introduction

The OGC API – *Maps* Standard defines building blocks which can be used in a Web API implementation to retrieve geospatial data as maps that are visual portrayals of the data created by applying a style to the data (see Requirements Class “Core”). Maps can present the whole area of the geospatial data or a subset of the content, such as by filtering the data by extent (see Requirements Class “Spatial subsetting”). Maps can be retrieved by arbitrary extent or as tiles (see Requirements Class “Map Tilesets”). The “Core” conformance class is the **only mandatory one**. All other conformance classes are optional and depend on the “Core”.

An annex with examples of map requests and responses is included as a way to ‘learn by example’ how this standard can be applied. See Annex B(informative)Examples.

An [example OpenAPI definition](#) for this Standard is available. Other examples are available on the [OGC API website](#). Details on how to adjust and bundle the [modular and reusable components](#) used in this example OpenAPI definition can be found in Requirements Class “API Operations” .

Services and clients are encouraged to support as many of the Coordinate Reference Systems (CRSs) as possible for all geospatial data resources to maximize interoperability. However, this Standard does not require support for any specific CRS.

The OGC API – *Maps* Standard does not specify any requirement for the type of *geospatial data resource* that could be delivered as maps. If the geospatial data resources can be organized into maps, they can be supported regardless of whether they are feature data, coverages, a resource that does not represent data per se (e.g., an annotation) and so forth.

NOTE: Geospatial data resources (e.g., collections) replace the concept of layer in WMS and WMTS. The main difference is that layers in WMS and WMTS were not defined by other OGC API Standards and did not support other functionalities.

These geospatial data resources can advertise one or more map portrayals in several resources, such as the dataset (see Requirements Class “Dataset Map”), a collection (see Requirements Class “Collection Map”), a dataset with a style, or a collection with a style (see Requirements Class “Styled Maps”). Implementations of other OGC API Standards can provide other origins that may be represented as maps. Accessing the *geospatial data resource* content (other than as maps) or its descriptions is possible but out of the scope of this Standard. If a description of the *geospatial data resource* is specified by another standard, and this description has a mechanism to add links to other resources, this Standard indicates the need to add a link to a map of this resource.

The OGC API – *Maps* Standard does not specify how to get a Web API definition, the conformance class list or the collections lists. However, the Maps API Standard assumes that the

first two are defined by some OGC API Standard (e.g., [OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core](#)) and the latter by an OGC API for collections (e.g., [OGC API – Common – Part 2: Geospatial data](#)). A similar definition is provided directly by [OGC API – Features – Part 1: Core](#).

This document is the first part of a series of OGC API – Maps “parts” that follows the core and extensions model. Future parts will specify other extensions, such as how to specify cartographic layout elements to be included on the map, how to specify a filter for which elements should be included on the map, and possibly how to query information for a point in a map.

6.2. Map interoperability

One of the most significant use cases for the definition of the *Maps API* is the ability to generate maps on the web from layers, provided by multiple servers, that can be overlaid into a single view. The *Maps API* Standard provides a clear and common way to request a map image that covers a bounding box of interest with a defined number of pixel rows and columns. When the *Maps API* is implemented by different organizations that offer different collections of information, the same bounding box, in the same CRS, and the same number of rows and columns can be requested from each organization’s geospatial repository. The result is a set of images that perfectly overlap showing different variables of the same area depending on the collection of geospatial data requested. For example, a population map can be requested from one organization (e.g., SEDAC Population Density) and a weather forecast from another (e.g., NDFD Surface Wind Velocity) in the exact same way allowing to present both together in one overlaid view or side-by-side.

Table 2 – SEDAC GPWv4 Population Density, 2015 and Forecast NDFD, Surface (10m AGL) Wind Velocity (Barb, Knots)



Figure 1



Figure 2



NOTE: The Requirements Class “Collection Selection” provides a way for clients to instruct a service implementing OGC API - Maps to include multiple sub-resources overlaid in the map response.

Figure 3 – Forecast NDFD wind speed on top of SEDAC Population density

6.3. How to approach an implementation of an OGC API Standard

There are at least two ways for using an implementation of one or more OGC API Standards:

- Read the landing page, look for links, follow them and discover new links until the desired resource is found
- Read a Web API definition document that specifies a list of paths and path templates to resources.

For the first approach, many resources in a deployed Web API include links with *rel* properties to document the reason and purpose for this relation. The following figure illustrates the resources as ellipses and the links as arrows with the link *rel* as a label.



Figure 4 – Resources and relations to them via links

For the second approach, implementations should consider the Requirements Class “API Operations” which defines the use of *operationID* suffixes, providing a mechanism to associate API paths with the requirements class that they implement.

There is a third way to approach an OGC API implementation instance. This approach relies on assuming a set of predefined paths and path templates. These predefined paths are used in many examples in this document and are presented together in Table 3. It is expected that many implementations of the Maps API Standard will provide a Web API definition document (e.g., OpenAPI) using this set of predefined paths and path templates to get necessary resources directly. All this could mislead the reader into getting the false impression that the predefined paths are enforced. Therefore, building a client that is assuming a predefined set of paths is risky. However, it is expected that many API implementations will follow the predefined set of paths. The clients using this assumption could be successful on many occasions. Again, be aware that these paths are not required by the Maps API Standard.

Table 3 – Overview of resources and common direct links that can be used to define an OGC API – Maps implementation

RESOURCE NAME	COMMON PATH
Landing page ⁴	{datasetRoot}/
Conformance declaration ⁴	{datasetRoot}/conformance
Dataset Maps	
Dataset maps in the default style ¹	{datasetRoot}/map
Dataset maps ^{1,2}	{datasetRoot}/styles/{styleId}/map

RESOURCE NAME	COMMON PATH
Dataset map tiles ^{1,3}	{datasetRoot}/map/tiles/{tileMatrixSetId}/...
<i>Geospatial data collections</i> ⁵	
Collections ⁵	{datasetRoot}/collections
Collection ⁵	{datasetRoot}/collections/{collectionId}
Collection maps in the default style	{datasetRoot}/collections/{collectionId}/map
Collection maps ²	{datasetRoot}/collections/{collectionId}/styles/{styleId}/map
Collection map tiles ³	{datasetRoot}/collections/{collectionId}/map/tiles/{tileMatrixSetId}/...

¹ From the whole dataset or one or more geospatial resources or collections ² Specified in the OGC API – Styles Standard ³ Specified in the OGC API – Tiles Part 1: Core Standard ⁴ Specified in the OGC API – Common Part 1: Core Standard ⁵ Specified in the OGC API – Common Part 2: Geospatial Data Standard

NOTE: Even though full path and full path templates in the previous table may be used in many implementations of the OGC API – Maps Standard, these exact paths are ONLY examples and are NOT required by this Standard. Other paths are possible if correctly described in by the Web API definition document and/or the links between resources.

6.4. OGC API – Maps within the OGC API family

6.4.1. What is a map?

A map is a portrayal of geographic information as a digital representation suitable for display on a rendering device (definition adapted from OGC 06-042). It can also be thought of as a portrayal of data resulting from applying a style, usually in the form of a 2D image format such as PNG or JPEG, or in presentation formats such as SVG. The way the styling rules for a style are applied to the data to create the portrayal is out of scope of this Standard (see the [OGC API – Styles](#) candidate Standard, as well as other OGC Standards which address this topic).

6.4.2. Implementing OGC API – Maps within a Web API

A map can be delivered as a single static resource (only implementing the Maps API “Core” requirements class), or as a dynamic service able to return different maps for arbitrary extents (implementing “Subsetting” requirements class) and/or at arbitrary scales (implementing

“Scaling” requirements class). In addition, a map can also be delivered as tiles by combining OGC API – *Maps* with some OGC API – *Tiles* requirements classes. This approach is defined by the “Map Tilesets” requirements class of this Standard, which also corresponds to *map tilesets* described in [OGC API – *Tiles*](#), with a *map* being a specific type of data resource for which tiles are provided.

The Maps API Standard defines building blocks that can be combined with other APIs generating or providing access to information having a geospatial component, including the other standards in the OGC API family such as OGC API – *Tiles* and OGC API – *Processes*. The Maps API Standard can be referenced by other standards providing resources that can be offered as maps. For example:

- [OGC API – *Tiles*](#) specifies the link relation types to access map tilesets from a dataset or collection. OGC API – *Tiles* can also be used to serve the source data (e.g., vector features or coverage data)
- [OGC API – *Styles*](#), a candidate Standard, defines paths to list available styles from which maps can also be accessed.
- [OGC API – *Processes – Part 3: Workflows and Chaining*](#), a candidate Standard, provides a mechanism to trigger localized processing workflows as a result of retrieving maps (for a specific area and resolution of interest).

The origin resources to which the map resource can be attached, such as the dataset landing page (defined by [OGC API – Common – Part 1](#)) and collection (defined by [OGC API – Common – Part 2](#)), may also provide access to the data used to generate the maps, alongside the Maps API capability. For example:

- [OGC API – *Tiles*](#) also specifies link relation types to access tilesets of vector and coverage data from a dataset or collection.
- [OGC API – *Features*](#) defines an API to access collections of vector features at /collections/{collectionId}/items and individual features at /collections/{collectionId}/items/{itemId}, including both geometry and properties.
- [OGC API – *Coverages*](#), a candidate Standard, defines an API to efficiently access information organized as multi-resolution and multi-dimensional datacubes at /collections/{collectionId}/coverage. Several common parameters in the Coverages API are shared with this Maps API. For some request formulations, it is possible to simply toggle between /map and /coverage (while keeping the same parameters) to alternate between retrieving the raw data values (a.k.a. a coverage) or a server-side visualization (a.k.a. a map).
- [OGC API – *EDR*](#) defines an API to retrieve spatiotemporal information using multiple query patterns such as cubes, trajectory, and corridors.

The possibilities are endless. For example, a generic open data API giving access to tables, some of them with columns storing latitude and longitude, could be enhanced with OGC API endpoints to provide mapping capabilities.

6.4.3. Dynamic and scalable map viewers

In the OGC, the concept of a map as an image was formulated in 1998 as part of the [OGC Web Map Service standards work](#). At that time, the web was very young. Most HTML pages were static, and JavaScript was a rudimentary programming language capable of controlling user entries in an HTML form and not much more. In that environment, having a service capable of creating a PNG that could be embedded as an HTML page by using an IMG tag provided the first approach to static maps on the web. Replacing the source (SRC) of the IMG tag programmatically with JavaScript, as a reaction of some user actions, provided the first approach to dynamic maps.

The WMS GetFeatureInfo request added a limited capability for queryable maps (that is, maps that could be interactively queried). However, users are now used to moving around the map by frequently doing zoom and pan operations. If the server does not provide a very fast response, the user experience is not smooth and the map display application is perceived as not responsive enough. One possible approach to solve this problem is dividing the viewport into tiles and requesting them separately. Since tiles follow a tile matrix pattern, they can be pre-rendered on the server-side or cached in intermediate services on the Internet. For implementing fast dynamic maps, the *OGC API – Maps* requirements should be combined with *OGC API – Tiles* requirements.

6.4.4. Client-side maps versus server-side maps

The *OGC API – Maps* Standard deals with maps that are generated by the server. The client can present them with no modification. Currently, even the smallest rendering device supports hardware rendering – the transformation from geometries to pixels can be done by the GPU. Transmitting geometries from the server commonly requires less bandwidth than transmitting the rendered map from the server and offers more flexibility on the client-side to personalize the portrayal style. Because of this, it is expected that *OGC API – Maps* use cases will focus more on static maps, infrequently changing requests for dynamic maps, as well as print cartography, whereas requesting raw data values using *OGC API – Tiles* (e.g. from tiled vector data and coverage tiles) is better suited for interactive clients presenting dynamic maps.

6.5. Description of the domain

The Maps API Standard defines how to describe the domain of the maps, including spatiotemporal axes as well as additional dimensions.

With the *Collection Map* requirements class, the [collection description](#) inherited from *OGC API – Common – Part 2* contains an extent property that can describe both the spatial and temporal domain of the data. In addition, the *Unified Additional Dimensions* common building block, specified in the *General Subsetting* requirements class and used in the [example OpenAPI definition](#), requires that additional dimensions be described in a similar way to the temporal dimension. This allows providing an overall lower and upper bound (the first interval element),

as well as optional sparse inner intervals where data is found along each dimension (additional interval elements). A grid property also supports the description of regular and irregular grids. The resolution (the distance between any two neighboring cells, an absolute value) and the number of cells (cellsCount) can be specified for each regular dimension. A list of coordinates where data is found can be specified for irregular dimensions. In addition, the minimum and maximum cell size (`minCellSize` and `maxCellSize`) and equivalent scale denominators (`minScaleDenominator` and `maxScaleDenominator`) can be specified in the collection resource.

The *Dataset Map* requirements class specifies the addition of an extent property to the landing page (root resource of the API) of OGC API – Common – Part 1 based on the same schema as for the collection.

6.6. Subsetting and scaling the map

The core requirements class of the Maps API Standard provides a way to retrieve the map that is modified by other classes allowing for subsetting the domain, specifying a particular size for the output map image, and changing the default assumption about the physical size of a pixel on the rendering device. The combination of these parameters also defines the scale of the map, which affects how scale-dependent symbology rules should be applied. These classes (Scaling, Display resolution and Subsetting) define the following parameters interacting with each other (in a not so trivial manner):

Table 4 – Parameters for scaling and subsetting

PARAMETER	DEFINITION
width	Width of the viewport in pixel units
height	Height of the viewport in pixel units
scale-denominator	Number of units in the physical world that is equivalent to 1 unit on the rendering device
mm-per-pixel	Size of one pixel on the rendering device expressed in millimeters. The default value is 0.28 mm
bbox (bbox-crs) (and the equivalent subset and subset-crs)	Bounding box of the requested map in CRS coordinates. It defines the geographic size.
center (center-crs)	Center of the requested map in CRS coordinates. center and bbox are mutually exclusive.

All these parameters are optional. The server needs to know the geographic extent covered by the map in physical world units, and the size of the map as rendered on the viewport (in both pixel units and physical units). Some combinations completely define both sizes. Some combinations of parameters generate impossible situations and will result in an error. Other combinations require that the server decides a default value for some parameters not provided

to be able to resolve the requested sizes. The Maps API Standard only specifies the default value for mm-per-pixel leaving to the server freedom to decide about the other parameters. The following tables present an overview of the different combinations possible depending on whether the *Scaling*, *Subsetting* or both *Scaling* and *Subsetting* requirements classes are supported by the implementation, to clarify the relationship between these parameters and provide centralized guidance for implementers.

NOTE 1: The parameter mm-per-pixel is not included in these tables but is used for computing one of the scale-denominator, dimensions (width and height), or spatial extent (bbox), based on the default or provided values for the others. If not provided in the request, the default is 0.28 mm per pixel.

NOTE 2: Every time that bbox appears as a provided parameter in these tables, it represents either bbox or the equivalent subset.

NOTE 3: Wherever width and height appear together in these tables, it also represents either of them being specified without the other. Depending on the parameter combination, the server either computes the appropriate value of the omitted dimension so as to reflect the correct scale (when a bounding box is also provided – see relevant requirements and guidance), or uses a default value which is either fixed or tied by a default aspect ratio to the one dimension specified (see recommendation).

Table 5 – Always valid requests (no scaling or subsetting parameter)

PARAMETERS PROVIDED IN THE REQUEST	SERVER OR RESOURCE DEFAULTS USED	COMPUTED
none	bbox, scale-denominator, center, width and height	None

Table 6 – Always invalid parameter combinations

PARAMETERS PROVIDED IN THE REQUEST	EXPLANATION
bbox, scale-denominator and (width or height)	Error (conflicts with default or provided mm-per-pixel)
bbox and center (with or without additional parameters)	Error (bbox and center are mutually exclusive)

Table 7 – Parameter combinations for implementations supporting Subsetting, but not Scaling

PARAMETERS PROVIDED IN THE REQUEST	SERVER OR RESOURCE DEFAULTS USED	COMPUTED
width and height	scale-denominator and center	bbox
bbox	scale-denominator	center, width and height

PARAMETERS PROVIDED IN THE REQUEST	SERVER OR RESOURCE DEFAULTS USED	COMPUTED
center	scale-denominator, width and height	bbox
center, width and height	scale-denominator	bbox
scale-denominator ¹	center	bbox, width and height
scale-denominator ¹ and center	None	bbox, width and height
scale-denominator, width and height	Error (would require rescaling the map)	
bbox, width and height	Error (would require rescaling the map)	
bbox and scale-denominator	Error (would require rescaling the map)	
scale-denominator, center, width and height	Error (would require rescaling the map)	

¹ The scale-denominator parameter is defined in the *Scaling* requirements class. However, an implementation supporting only *Subsetting* may (but is not required to) still recognize the scale-denominator parameter and compute width and height dimensions accordingly, along with the corresponding bounding box. In this case, a Subsetting-only implementation may not be applying scale-dependent symbolization rules correctly, since it likely would not render the map anew, but simply cut a piece from a pre-rendered map of a default scale. This is not an issue for maps without any scale-dependent symbolization, such as plain imagery.

Table 8 – Parameter combinations for implementations supporting *Scaling*, but not *Subsetting*

PARAMETERS PROVIDED IN THE REQUEST	SERVER OR RESOURCE DEFAULTS USED	COMPUTED
width and height	bbox and center	scale-denominator
scale-denominator	bbox and center	width and height
scale-denominator, width and height	Error (would require subsetting the map)	
bbox or center (with or without additional parameters)	Error (would require subsetting the map)	

Table 9 – Parameter combinations for implementations supporting both *Subsetting* and *Scaling*

PARAMETERS PROVIDED IN THE REQUEST	SERVER OR RESOURCE DEFAULTS USED	COMPUTED
width and height	scale-denominator and center	bbox
bbox	width and height	scale-denominator and center
center	scale-denominator, width and height	bbox
center, width and height	scale-denominator	bbox
scale-denominator	center, width and height	bbox
scale-denominator and center	width and height	bbox
scale-denominator, width and height	center	bbox
bbox, width and height	None (fully defined combination) ¹	scale-denominator and center
bbox and scale-denominator	None (fully defined combination) ²	center, width and height
scale-denominator, center, width and height	None (fully defined combination) ²	bbox

¹ This combination corresponds to the WMS parameters and should be used for obtaining identical results from different implementations. ² Different implementations may maintain a slightly different relationship between the dimensions (width and height), the spatial extent (bbox) and the scale-denominator, based on different considerations for calculating the scales of the map across each dimension. This may result in the bbox, width or height being computed differently between these implementations. Clients should always use Content-Bbox: header to properly georeference the output, and not expect unspecified parameters to be computed to a particular value.

NOTE: Changing the output CRS using the crs parameter will of course also have an impact on the mapping between pixels on the map and units in the real world, and on the calculated bounding box (in output CRS units).

See examples in an annex for computations inferring dimensions and inferring bounding boxes based on specified parameters.

6.7. Available formats and map response expectations

The Maps API Standard defines six requirements classes for specific encodings to encode map data. Additional encodings can be supported using HTTP content negotiation, following conventions specific to those encodings.

7

REQUIREMENTS CLASS “CORE”

REQUIREMENTS CLASS “CORE”

7.1. Overview

REQUIREMENTS CLASS 1: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘CORE’

IDENTIFIER	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core
TARGET TYPE	Web API
CONFORMANCE CLASS	Conformance class A.1: https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core
NORMATIVE STATEMENTS	Requirement 1: /req/core/map-op Requirement 2: /req/core/map-response Requirement 3: /req/core/conformance-success

The core requirements class specifies a map resource. This is a resource that represents geospatial data as a rendered map. Requesting a map resource, as defined in the core, results in retrieving a generic map as a graphical representation of the data in the repository being accessed via the API endpoint. When using an implementation of the core requirements class, the representation is not constrained in any way by the client. Therefore, the server is free to return a total or a partial representation of the resource at an arbitrary size. Additional Maps API requirements classes add query parameters to personalize the server behavior to the client needs. These requirements classes define specific parameters that allow the client to control the map size and resolution of the map (width, height, bounding box and CRS) as well as the background of the map. An additional requirements class defines how a map resource can be retrieved as tiles by applying the OGC API – Tiles.

A map resource can be obtained from an arbitrary geospatial resource by adding /map to the resource URI. The core requirements class does not specify to which resources /map is applicable. However, a list of common paths to resources exposed by the API, where maps can commonly be obtained is presented in the following table. The Collection Maps, Dataset maps and Styled Maps requirements classes define some of these possibilities.

Table 10 – Common map resources in a geospatial API

RESOURCE PATH	DESCRIPTION
/map	A map representing datasets behind the API in the default style

RESOURCE PATH	DESCRIPTION
/styles/{styleId}/map	A map representing datasets behind the API in the styleId style
/collections/{collectionId}/map	A map representing collectionId in the default style
/collections/{collectionId}/styles/{styleId}/map	A map representing collectionId in the styleId style

NOTE: There is no mandatory dependency of the Maps API core on OGC API – Common. This allows various Web APIs to implement the core requirements class without the need to comply to the OGC API – Common structure (landing page, conformance, API description). However, many implementations may specify a dependency on OGC API – Common in their conformance page.

7.2. Map resource

A map distribution of a geospatial resource is a pictorial representation of that resource (map). To create a pictorial representation, a style is added to the data in the geospatial resource by a portrayal engine and following portrayal rules. This style can be internal (default style) or can be governed by the client.

This section defines the core resource of the OGC API – Maps Standard: A map representation for a geospatial resource. To keep the core of OGC API – Maps simple, the core only includes a mechanism to retrieve a map of the size and for the spatiotemporal extent that the server considers optimal.

7.2.1. Operation

REQUIREMENT 1	
IDENTIFIER	/req/core/map-op
INCLUDED IN	Requirements class 1: https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core
A	Every map SHALL be available as an HTTP GET request to a URI that will be composed of three parts. The first part is the URI of a resource that can be represented as a map (with or without a style path parameter). The second part follows the pattern /map. The third part provides the retrieval parameters as needed.

7.2.2. Response

REQUIREMENT 2

IDENTIFIER /req/core/map-response

INCLUDED IN Requirements class 1: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core>

A A successful execution of a map operation SHALL be a response with an HTTP status code 200.

B The map response SHALL be in the storage CRS specified in the description of the geospatial resource (such as the associated collection or dataset), or <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> if none is specified, unless overridden by a specific query parameter (see Requirements Class "Coordinate Reference System").

C The headers of the response SHALL include the Content-Crs: header with the URI or the safe CURIEs of the CRS used to render the map, except if the content is in the <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> CRS.

D The headers of the response SHALL include a Content-Bbox: header with the actual geospatial boundary of the rendered map.

E The Content-Bbox: coordinates SHALL be in the response CRS (indicated in the Content-Crs: or <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> if it is not present) and SHALL contain four comma-separated numbers representing the lower-left and upper-right corners of the response honoring the CRS coordinates order.

F If the geospatial resource has a temporal aspect (e.g., if a temporal extent is defined in the collection description or in the dataset landing page), the headers of the response SHALL include a Content-Datetime: header with the actual datetime instant or datetime interval of the rendered map.

G In the Content-Datetime: response header, a datetime interval SHALL be expressed using the notation time-instant / time-instant.

H In the Content-Datetime: response header, a time instant, whether a single value or the time-instant of an interval, SHALL be expressed as defined in RFC 3339, section 5.6, using either UTC time or local time offsets, with the additional options of:

- only a year: yyyy
- a year and a month: yyyy-mm
- a year, a month and a day: yyyy-mm-dd
- a year, a month, a day and an hour: yyyy-mm-ddThhZ (or e.g., yyyy-mm-ddThh-04:00)
- a year, a month, a day, an hour and a minute: yyyy-mm-ddThh:mmZ (or e.g., yyyy-mm-ddThh-04:00)

I The body of a response of a successful operation SHALL contain a map encoded in the negotiated format.

Below is an example of the successful HTTP response headers describing a PNG image with 1500 columns and 616 rows in the datum WGS84 and projection UTM zone 31N centered in the Barcelona area.

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Content-Type: image/jpeg
Last-Modified: Fri, 05 Jul 2024 16:46:55 GMT
Content-Crs: <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/EPSG/0/25831>
Content-Bbox: 392011.47,4563522.45,453461.47,4591522.45
Content-Datetime: 2020-01
Content-Length: 190946
```



Figure 5 – Example of a successful HTTP response body containing a JPEG image captured by LANDSAT in January 2020

Below is another example of the successful HTTP response headers describing a PNG image in the datum WGS84 and coordinates centered in the Barcelona area.

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Content-Type: image/png
Last-Modified: Thu, 27 Jul 2023 14:37:46 GMT
Content-Bbox: 2.1486,41.3674,2.1886,41.4074
```

7.2.3. Recommendations

RECOMMENDATION 1

IDENTIFIER /rec/core/map-op

- A** In the absence of subsetting parameters, the server SHOULD return the entire map.
- B** In absence of the scaling parameter, a reasonable width and height SHOULD be selected that preserves the aspect ratio.

RECOMMENDATION 2

IDENTIFIER /rec/core/content-crs

- A Even if the content is in the <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> CRS the headers SHOULD still include a “Content-Crs” header to state the CRS.

RECOMMENDATION 3

IDENTIFIER /rec/core/content-attribution

- A Content-Attribution: header SHOULD be included in the response to a map request to indicate any attribution relevant to the data being returned, especially if this attribution varies based on the subset and scale of the request.

RECOMMENDATION 4

IDENTIFIER /rec/core/legend-thumbnail-style

- A If a legend representing the symbols, lines and colors in the style applied to the map is available for a style of the map, or for the default map resource, the server SHOULD advertise the legend in the list of styles (for each style element) or in the originating resource for the map (e.g., the landing page or collection description), by providing an extra link with a relation type `rel=https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/legend`.
- B The server SHOULD support `minScaleDenominator` and `maxScaleDenominator` query parameters for the legend resource specifying the range of scales applicable to the style. Without these parameters the legend is applicable to all scales.
- C If a thumbnail is available for a style of the map, the server SHOULD advertise the thumbnail in the list of styles (for each style element) or in the originating resource for the map by providing an extra link with a relation type `rel=preview`.
- D If one or more style resources are available to apply the style to the map, the server SHOULD advertise them in the list of styles (for each style element) or in the originating resource for the map by providing extra links with a relation type `rel=stylesheet`.

RECOMMENDATION 5

IDENTIFIER /rec/core/multiple-media-types

- A If “image/png” and “image/jpeg” are supported at an endpoint and both are present in the HTTP “Accept” request header with the same q value, and no other supported output format is present with a higher q value, the server SHOULD select between PNG and JPEG and return the format considered

RECOMMENDATION 5

optimal. Typically, PNG will be returned if there is transparency or for categorical maps where a limited number of colors are used, and JPEG otherwise.

Retrieving a map without subsetting or tiling has limited use. An implementation should therefore consider allowing retrieving only part of a map by supporting the *map tilesets* and/or the *spatial subsetting* requirements class.

NOTE 1: The desired encoding is selected using HTTP content negotiation. In addition to the parameters specified by the Maps API core, other parameters should be added.

NOTE 2: HTTP content negotiation addresses the same use cases as the `FORMAT=` parameter of WMS. However, for convenience, some implementations can implement an `f=` parameter for circumstances where content negotiation is not possible or available (e.g., testing the API in a web browser, or using a URL embedded in an HTML IMG SRC tag).

7.3. Declaration of conformance classes

To support “generic” clients that want to access implementations of multiple OGC API Standards and extensions – and not “just” a specific API / server, the deployed API must declare the conformance classes it implements and conforms to.

The conformance declaration response mainly consists of a list of links.

REQUIREMENT 3

IDENTIFIER /req/core/conformance-success

INCLUDED IN Requirements class 1: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core>

A If the API instance has a mechanism to advertise conformance classes, the list of conformance classes SHALL include the ones defined in this standard and listed in Table 1 that are supported by this API implementation instance.

If the server declares conformity also to OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core or to OGC API – Features – Part 1: Core, then the OGC API requirements for declaring conformance, such as the use of the /conformance resource, must be considered. In the JSON format, the conformance resource is an array of links following the link schema defined in OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core or in OGC API – Features – Part 1: Core. Below is an example fragment of a conformance information page of an API implementation conformant to OGC API – Common and OGC API – Maps.

An example Conformance Information Page fragment is below:

```
{  
  "conformsTo": [  
    "https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-common-1/1.0/conf/core",  
    "https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-common-2/1.0/conf/collections",  
    "https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core"  
  ]  
}
```

8

REQUIREMENTS CLASS “MAP TILESETS”

REQUIREMENTS CLASS “MAP TILESETS”

8.1. Overview

REQUIREMENTS CLASS 2: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘MAP TILESETS’

IDENTIFIER	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/tilesets
TARGET TYPE	Web API
CONFORMANCE CLASS	Conformance class A.2: https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/tilesets
PREREQUISITES	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-tiles-1/1.0/req/tilesets-list Requirements class 1: https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core
NORMATIVE STATEMENTS	Requirement 4: /req/tilesets/desc-links Requirement 5: /req/tilesets/tiles-parameters

The Map Tilesets requirements class describes how to provide access to a map as tilesets in combination with the [OGC API – Tiles Standard](#), which is based on the [OGC 2D Tile Matrix Set and Tileset Metadata Standard](#). Tiles facilitate caching of data for clients and servers by requesting predefined subsets at fixed resolutions according to multi-resolution set of grids called a *TileMatrixSet*.

NOTE 1: WMTS was focused on map tiles. A map tile is a tile that contains information in a raster form where the values of cells are colors which can be readily displayed on rendering devices (OGC 20-057). Since OGC API – Tiles allows for other types of tiled data (e.g., tiled vector data and tiled coverage data), the term ‘map tiles’ is used in a similar way to how it was used in WMTS 1.0.

While supporting map tiles and map tilesets without conforming to this requirements class is possible, implementing this requirements class means that the tiles resources support parameters defined by [OGC API – Maps](#) in the following requirements classes:

- Background (bgcolor and transparent parameter),
- Display resolution (mm-per-pixel),
- Spatial subsetting (only if a vertical dimension is available, since the 2D Tile Matrix Sets already handle partitioning the other two dimensions, and only for subset and subset-crs parameters),

- General subsetting (subset for dimensions beyond spatial and temporal),
- Scaling (scale-denominator, width and height which will override the usual tileSize and tileHeight of the requested tile in pixels from the tile matrix, but those values are still used for calculating the geospatial bounding box corresponding to each tile),

NOTE 2: OGC API – Tiles defines its own equivalent requirements class for temporal subsetting.

8.2. Link from data resource

A map resource can be accessed as tiles if the API implementation instance exposes a link to map tilesets in the resource that is available as map tiles.

REQUIREMENT 4

IDENTIFIER /req/tilesets/desc-links

INCLUDED IN	Requirements class 2: https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/tilesets
A	The geospatial data resource (e.g., the collection or landing page description's links property) SHALL include a link with the href pointing to a list of tilesets provided from this geospatial data resource using rel: https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/tilesets-map .

Example – Fragment of a collection description document with a links array and with one item of the array pointing to a list of map tilesets.

```
{
  "links": [
    ...
    {
      "href": "https://data.example.com/collections/buildings/map/tiles",
      "rel": "https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/tilesets-map",
      "type": "application/json"
    }
  ]
}
```

8.3. Map Tileset

A tileset contains the necessary metadata to enable a client application to formulate a tile request from a single geospatial data resource.

8.3.1. Operation

The operations to retrieve a list of tilesets, individual tilesets and individual tiles are described respectively in the Tilesets List, TileSet and Core requirements classes of the OGC API – *Tiles* Standard.

The Map Tileset requirements class specifies that the query parameters of the GET request to individual map tiles support additional parameters as defined in the *background*, *display resolution*, *spatial subsetting* (if a vertical dimension is available), *general subsetting*, and *scaling* requirements classes.

REQUIREMENT 5

IDENTIFIER /req/tilesets/tiles-parameters

INCLUDED IN	Requirements class 2: https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/tilesets
A	Implementations of the Maps API SHALL support parameters specified in the <i>background</i> , <i>display resolution</i> , <i>spatial subsetting</i> (only for subset and subset-crs using a vertical dimension, if available), <i>general subsetting</i> , and <i>scaling</i> requirements classes, for map tiles endpoint if the implementation declares conformance to the associated conformance classes.

8.3.2. Response

Successful GET responses to requests for a list of map tilesets, an individual map tileset, and map tiles are described in the corresponding requirements class of the OGC API – *Tiles* Standard. The response to map tiles requests shall also reflect the parameters as specified in the operation requirement.

9

REQUIREMENTS CLASS “BACKGROUND”

REQUIREMENTS CLASS “BACKGROUND”

9.1. Overview

REQUIREMENTS CLASS 3: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘BACKGROUND’

IDENTIFIER	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/background
TARGET TYPE	Web API
CONFORMANCE CLASS	Conformance class A.3: https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/background
PREREQUISITE	Requirements class 1: https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core
NORMATIVE STATEMENTS	<p>Requirement 6: /req/background/bgcolor-definition Requirement 7: /req/background/transparent-definition Requirement 8: /req/background/void-color-definition Requirement 9: /req/background/void-transparent-definition Requirement 10: /req/background/map-success</p>

The Background requirements class describes how to define the background of the map that is presented.

9.2. Map operation

The Maps API core requirements class defines how to get a map. The Map operation requirements class specifies parameters supporting customization of the background of the map.

9.2.1. Parameters `transparent` and `bgcolor`

The transparent and bgcolor parameters indicate how the absence of data will be represented in the map, what color will show underneath any non-opaque layer, and allow for the map to be overlaid with other maps without completely obscuring the lower layers.

REQUIREMENT 6

IDENTIFIER /req/background/bgcolor-definition

INCLUDED IN

Requirements class 3: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/background>

The map operation SHALL support a parameter bgcolor to define a background color with the characteristics defined in the OpenAPI Specification 3.0 fragment:

A
A **bgcolor:**
 name: bgcolor
 in: query
 description: |-
 Hexadecimal red-green-blue color value (0-255) or case-insensitive W3C web color name for the background color (default=0xFFFFFF). For a six digit hexadecimal value, the first and second digits specify the intensity of red. The third and fourth digits specify the intensity of green. The fifth and sixth digits specify the intensity of blue.
 required: false
 style: form
 explode: false
 schema:
 type: string
 default: 0xFFFFFF

B
B The map operation SHALL support a bgcolor parameter which can be a hexadecimal red-green-blue color value (from 00 to FF, FF representing 255) or a case-insensitive [W3C web color name](#) for the background color of the map (default=0xFFFFFF). For a six-digit hexadecimal value, the first and second digits specify the intensity of red. The third and fourth digits specify the intensity of green. The fifth and sixth digits specify the intensity of blue.

C

C If bgcolor is not specified, and either transparent is set to false or the output format cannot encode transparency, the server SHALL use the background color specified by the requested style.

RECOMMENDATION 6

IDENTIFIER /rec/background/bgcolor-definition

A

If bgcolor is not specified, and either transparent is set to false or the output format cannot encode transparency and the style applied to the map does not specify a background color, the server SHOULD use a neutral default color such as white or a light shade of gray.

The list of [W3C web color names](#) which can be specified instead of a hexadecimal value can be found in Annex D(informative)Background color codes

PERMISSION 1

IDENTIFIER /per/background/bgcolor-alpha

PERMISSION 1

- A The implementation MAY support a `bgcolor` parameter with eight hexadecimal digits where the first two represent an alpha value, to be used as the opacity value for no data areas (where “FF” is completely opaque and “00” is fully transparent).

REQUIREMENT 7

IDENTIFIER /req/background/transparent-definition

- INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 3: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/background>
- The map operation SHALL support an optional parameter `transparent` specifying whether to use or not a transparent background with the characteristics defined in the OpenAPI Specification 3.0 fragment:
- ```
name: transparent
in: query
description:
 '(defaults to `true` without a `bgcolor` specified, but to `false` when a `bgcolor` is used).'
required: false
style: form
explode: false
schema:
 type: boolean
 default: true
```
- B The server SHALL interpret `transparent` as a Boolean indicating whether the background of the map should be transparent.
- C If `transparent` is not specified and a `bgcolor` is not specified, the server SHALL assume a value of `true`.
- D If `transparent` is not specified and a `bgcolor` is specified, the server SHALL assume a value of `false`.
- E If `transparent` is `true` and a `bgcolor` is specified, the server SHALL use 0 for the background's opacity.

**NOTE 1:** When not specified, the value of `transparent` defaults to `true` when `bgcolor` is not used, but to `false` when used together with `bgcolor`. For formats with an alpha channel, explicitly setting `transparent=true` together with a `bgcolor` allows for defining the color value to use for the RGB channels where there is no data. Zero (0) will be used for the alpha channel. For formats reserving a color to define transparency (color key), the combination supports selecting a color that does not interfere with the actual values and colors in the map.

**NOTE 2:** The `opaque` attribute of layer element in the GetCapabilities response in WMS is not specified by the Maps API.

## 9.2.2. Parameters `void-transparent` and `void-color`

The `void-transparent` and `void-color` parameters indicate how parts of the map outside of the valid area of the projection and CRS will be represented.

If not specified, these parameters default to the same value as `transparent` and `bgcolor`, respectively.

**NOTE:** These parameters only apply to CRSs including an invalid area, such as a CRS using an orthographic projection.

### REQUIREMENT 8

**IDENTIFIER** /req/background/void-color-definition

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 3: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/background>

The map operation SHALL support a parameter `void-color` to define a void color with the characteristics defined in the OpenAPI Specification 3.0 fragment:

```
void-color:
 name: void-color
 in: query
 description: |-
 Hexadecimal red-green-blue color value (0-255) or case-insensitive W3C
 web color name for the
 color of parts of the map outside of the valid CRS / projection areas
 (default=0xFFFFFF). For a six digit hexadecimal value, the first and second
 digits specify the intensity of red. The third and fourth digits specify
 the intensity of
 green. The fifth and sixth digits specify the intensity of blue.
 required: false
 style: form
 explode: false
 schema:
 type: string
 default: 0xFFFFFF
```

- A The map operation SHALL support a `void-color` parameter which can be a hexadecimal red-green-blue color value (from 00 to FF, FF representing 255) or a case-insensitive [W3C web color name](#) for the parts of the map outside of the valid areas of the projection / CRS (default=0xFFFFFF). For a six-digit hexadecimal value, the first and second digits specify the intensity of red. The third and fourth digits specify the intensity of green. The fifth and sixth digits specify the intensity of blue.
- B If `void-color` is not specified, the same color value as for `bgcolor` (specified or default) SHALL be used.

As for `bgcolor`, the W3C web color names can be specified instead of a hexadecimal value.

## REQUIREMENT 9

**IDENTIFIER** /req/background/void-transparent-definition

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 3: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/background>

The map operation SHALL support an optional parameter void-transparent specifying whether to use a different transparent setting for parts of the map outside of the valid areas of the projection / CRS with the characteristics defined in the OpenAPI Specification 3.0 fragment:

A      name: void-transparent  
      in: query  
      description:  
          '(defaults to the same value, specified or default, as `transparent`).'  
      required: false  
      style: form  
      explode: false  
      schema:  
          type: boolean  
          default: true

B      The server SHALL interpret void-transparent as a Boolean indicating whether the parts of the map outside of the valid areas of the projection / CRS should be transparent.

C      If void-transparent is not specified, the server SHALL assume the same value as for transparent (specified or default).

### 9.2.3. Response

A successful GET response is described in the core class (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core>)

## REQUIREMENT 10

**IDENTIFIER** /req/background/map-success

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 3: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/background>

A      The color of the map in the areas with no data SHALL be exactly the one specified in the bgcolor.

B      The color in parts of the map outside of the valid areas of the projection / CRS SHALL be the one specified by void-color, or otherwise default to the same as the background color (whether specified by bgcolor or default).

C      The transparency setting in parts of the map outside of the valid areas of the projection / CRS SHALL be the one specified by void-transparent, or otherwise default to the same as the background transparency setting (whether specified by transparent or default).

D      In case the output format allows it and in the absence of the transparent parameter (or if it is false), the opacity (alpha value) of the map in the areas with no data SHALL be exactly 100% if transparent is false or 0% if transparent is true.

**NOTE:** If the renderer supports anti-aliasing, at the edges between data and no-data areas, the opacity may be a value between 0% and 100%.

10

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “COLLECTION SELECTION”

---

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “COLLECTION SELECTION”

---

## 10.1. Overview

---

### REQUIREMENTS CLASS 4: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘COLLECTION SELECTION’

|                      |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER           | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/collections-selection">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/collections-selection</a>                          |
| TARGET TYPE          | Web API                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| CONFORMANCE CLASS    | Conformance class A.4: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/collections-selection">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/collections-selection</a> |
| PREREQUISITE         | Requirements class 1: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core</a>                                      |
| NORMATIVE STATEMENTS | Requirement 11: /req/collections-selection/collections-parameter<br>Requirement 12: /req/collections-selection/collections-response                                                      |

In a deployed Web API incorporating elements of the OGC API – Maps Standard that provides access to a complex dataset formed by several geospatial data resources, selecting specific sub-resources of interest when requesting data from this dataset can be useful. The Collection Selection requirements class defines how to include a query parameter when requesting a resource (e.g., dataset tiles) to specify which geospatial data resources (e.g., collections) should be used to generate the response.

This requirements class is particularly useful in conjunction with the Requirements Class “Dataset Map” requirements class. However, sub-components of other resource types could be selected using this requirements class. A requirements class equivalent to this one is included in OGC API – Tiles.

## 10.2. Operation

---

By default, the geospatial data resources included in the dataset maps responses are unspecified but should represent the dataset as a whole (but not necessarily the entire extent of the dataset content). This class adds a mechanism to select the geospatial data resources to be used to

generate the derived resources (e.g., maps or map tiles). In practice this enables the capability to generate resources involving more than one geospatial data sub-resource.

### 10.2.1. Parameter collections

#### REQUIREMENT 11

**IDENTIFIER** /req/collections-selection/collections-parameter

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 4: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/collections-selection>

An operation that acts on a resource consisting of multiple geospatial data sub-resources (e.g., a resource derived from a root dataset) SHALL support an optional parameter collections with the following characteristics (shown as an OpenAPI Specification 3.0 fragment):

A      name: collections  
      in: query  
      required: false  
      style: form  
      explode: false  
      schema:  
          type: array  
          items:  
            type: string

B      The parameter collections SHALL be supported by maps originating from resources consisting of multiple geospatial data sub-resources that can be addressed by identifiers (e.g. dataset map at {datasetAPI}/maps/).

C      Implementations SHALL support both a comma-separated list of geospatial resource identifiers (e.g., collectionId's) and full URLs to local geospatial resources.

When this parameter refers to more than one geospatial data resource, this parameter will use the comma (",") as the separator between the resource identifiers in the list. Additional white space will not be used to delimit list items. If a geospatial data resource identifier includes a space or comma, it shall be escaped using the URL encoding rules (IETF RFC 2396).

#### PERMISSION 2

**IDENTIFIER** /per/collections-selection/valid-collections

A      An implementation MAY return an error when the specified list of collections is not supported, for reasons such as an incompatible combination, or an unsupported encoding or CRS for some of the selected collections.

An example request is:

`www.example.com/map?collections=buildings,roads`

## 10.2.2. Response

A successful GET response is described in the core class (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core>)

### REQUIREMENT 12

**IDENTIFIER** /req/collections-selection/collections-response

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 4: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/collections-selection>

**A** Only the collections of geospatial data enumerated in the values of the collections parameter SHALL be used to generate the responses for the resource (map) to which they apply.

**B** If there is more than one collection name and the style applied does not specify otherwise, collections SHALL be rendered in the result in an order starting with the first (leftmost) collection and ending with the last (rightmost).

**NOTE:** In maps and map tiles, sub-requirement B will result in the first collection being portrayed at the “bottom” of the display stack with the others rendered on top of the previous ones, one by one (the rightmost collection will become topmost in the portrayal).

## 10.2.3. Error conditions

If the value of the parameter collections contains a resource id of URI that does not exist on the implementation instance of the Maps API or too many collections are requested, the status code of the response is 400.

If the value of the parameter collections has a wrong format or combines one or more geospatial data resources that are not compatible (e.g., they do not have a compatible value specified by other parameters in the request), the status code of the response is 400.

## 10.3. Service Metadata

The OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core Standard describes a mechanism to expose service-metadata for the API. See: <https://docs.ogc.org/is/19-072/19-072.html#service-metadata-examples>

## RECOMMENDATION 7

**IDENTIFIER** /rec/collection-selection/maxcollections

The service metadata may include a maximum number of collections that can be included to create the map. Clients should not request a map with more collections than this limit and if they do, they should expect that the server will not be able to create a map. These characteristics are defined as (shown as an OpenAPI Specification 3.0 fragment).

A            `x-OGC-limits:`  
              `type: object`  
              `properties:`  
              `maps:`  
              `type: object`  
              `properties:`  
              `maxCollections:`  
              `type: integer`  
              `description:`  
              `Maximum number of collections in the collections parameter. If absent the server imposes no limit.`  
              `example: 5`

B            In the absence of maxCollections the client will assume that there is no limit in the number of collections.

**NOTE:** This mimics the LayerLimit element in the WMS 1.3 GetCapabilities document.

11

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “SCALING”

---

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “SCALING”

## 11.1. Overview

### REQUIREMENTS CLASS 5: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘SCALING’

|                      |                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER           | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/scaling">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/scaling</a>                                         |
| TARGET TYPE          | Web API                                                                                                                                                                     |
| CONFORMANCE CLASS    | Conformance class A.5: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/scaling">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/scaling</a>                |
| PREREQUISITE         | Requirements class 1: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core</a>                         |
| NORMATIVE STATEMENTS | <p>Requirement 13: /req/scaling/width-definition</p> <p>Requirement 14: /req/scaling/height-definition</p> <p>Requirement 15: /req/scaling/scale-denominator-definition</p> |

The Scaling requirements class describes how to scale a map for display by specifying a set of parameters that will define its size (width and height) in pixels of a display device that indirectly defines the scale of the map.

## 11.2. Map Operation

The Maps API *core* requirements class defines how to retrieve a map. The Scaling requirements class specifies two alternative mechanisms for specifying the scale of the map, either implicitly by providing output dimensions using width and height parameters, or explicitly by providing a scale-denominator parameter.

### 11.2.1. Parameters `width` and `height`

The width and height parameters indicate the size of the viewport in rows and columns where the map is to be displayed. If the format of the response is a raster image, the number of columns and rows of the image in the response will commonly match the width and height of the viewport.

## REQUIREMENT 13

**IDENTIFIER** /req/scaling/width-definition

|                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>INCLUDED IN</b>                                                                                                                    | Requirements class 5: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/scaling">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/scaling</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <p>The map operation SHALL support a parameter width with the characteristics defined in the Open API Specification 3.0 fragment:</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| A                                                                                                                                     | <pre>width:<br/>  name: width<br/>  in: query<br/>  description:<br/>    Width of the viewport in pixel units to present the response (the map subset).<br/>    required: false<br/>    style: form<br/>    schema:<br/>      type: number</pre>                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| B                                                                                                                                     | The width value SHALL be interpreted as the horizontal size (columns) of the viewport where the response will be presented in pixel units (number of pixels).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| C                                                                                                                                     | An HTTP 4xx error SHALL be returned if the width number is not a positive integer number.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| D                                                                                                                                     | An HTTP 4xx error SHALL be returned (preferably a 413) if the value of the width exceeds the maxWidth property specified in the x-OGC-limits.maps object included in the service metadata <sup>1</sup> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| E                                                                                                                                     | An HTTP 4xx error SHALL be returned (preferably a 413) if the value of the width (specified or calculated) times height (specified or calculated) exceeds a maxPixels property from an x-OGC-limits.maps object included in the service metadata <sup>1</sup> .                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| F                                                                                                                                     | An HTTP 4xx error SHALL be returned if the width parameter is used together with the bbox (or subset for spatial dimensions) as well as the scale-denominator parameter.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| G                                                                                                                                     | An HTTP 4xx error SHALL be returned if the width parameter is used together with the scale-denominator parameter and the implementation does not also support the "Subsetting" requirements class.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| H                                                                                                                                     | When the width parameter is omitted, the implementation SHALL use an appropriate width which accurately reflects the default or requested scale established as the ratio between the horizontal dimension of the viewport and the corresponding size of the physical world, specifically for the local subset (bounding box) of the map being returned, and taking into consideration the default (0.28 mm/pixel) or specified display resolution (mm-per-pixel). |

<sup>1</sup> Service metadata may be provided as an extension of the info section of the OpenAPI document as indicated in [OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core](#), Annex B.4 and discussed in the last subsection of the Maps API scaling requirements class section.

## REQUIREMENT 14

**IDENTIFIER** /req/scaling/height-definition

## REQUIREMENT 14

### INCLUDED IN

Requirements class 5: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/scaling>

The map operation SHALL support a parameter height with the characteristics defined in the Open API Specification 3.0 fragment:

```
height:
 name: height
 in: query
 description:
 Height of the viewport in pixel units to present the response (the map subset).
 required: false
 style: form
 schema:
 type: number
```

B The height value SHALL be interpreted as the vertical size (rows) of the viewport where the response will be presented in pixel units (number of pixels).

C An HTTP 4xx error SHALL be returned if the height value is not a positive integer number.

D An HTTP 4xx error SHALL be returned (preferably a 413) if the value of the height exceeds the maxHeight property specified in the x-OGC-limits.maps object included in the service metadata<sup>1</sup>.

E An HTTP 4xx error SHALL be returned (preferably a 413) if the value of the width (specified or calculated) times height (specified or calculated) exceeds a maxPixels property from a x-OGC-limits.maps object included in the service metadata<sup>1</sup>.

F An HTTP 4xx error SHALL be returned if the height parameter is used together with the bbox (or subset for spatial dimensions) as well as the scale-denominator parameter.

G An HTTP 4xx error SHALL be returned if the height parameter is used together with the scale-denominator parameter and the implementation does not also support the "Subsetting" requirements class.

H When the height parameter is omitted, the implementation SHALL use an appropriate height which accurately reflects the default or requested scale established as the ratio between the vertical dimension of the viewport and the corresponding size of the physical world, specifically for the local subset (bounding box) of the map being returned.

<sup>1</sup> Service metadata may be provided as an extension of the info section of the OpenAPI document as indicated in [OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core](#), Annex B.4 and discussed in the last subsection of the Maps API scaling requirements class section

**NOTE:** The width and height parameters are also defined by the Maps API *spatial subsetting* requirements class. The parameter takes this resampling (scaling) role in requests not using either of the scale-denominator parameter (defined in this requirements class), or the center parameter (defined in the *spatial subsetting* requirements class), or when the *spatial subsetting* requirements class is not supported. In combination with a bounding box and display resolution (either the default of 0.28 mm/pixel or one specified by mm-per-pixel parameter from the *display resolution* conformance class), the width and height parameters define the scale of the map.

## RECOMMENDATION 8

**IDENTIFIER** /rec/scaling/dimensions

- A If the width or height parameter is not specified for a request, and no specific bounding box is requested (using the subset or bbox parameters defined in the Subsetting requirements class), the implementation SHOULD use the same value for both dimensions to return a map with a square viewport or preserve a particular width to height ratio.
- B If neither width nor height parameter is specified for a request, and no specific bounding box is requested (using the subset or bbox parameters defined in the Subsetting requirements class), the implementation SHOULD select reasonable dimensions that will produce a map that is neither too small, nor require too much bandwidth to transfer or process (for example, around 1000 x 1000 pixels for the default 0.28 mm/pixel resolution).

### 11.2.2. Parameter `scale-denominator`

A client can specify the desired scale of the map as a scale denominator value using a `scale-denominator` parameter. Given a selected unit of measure, the scale denominator specifies how many of these units in the real world correspond to a distance of one unit on the map as printed or displayed.

**NOTE 1:** The correspondence between real world units and display units depends on the display resolution for which a default 0.28 mm/pixel is assumed, unless a client specifies otherwise through the display resolution requirements class.

**NOTE 2:** The `scale-denominator` is the only way to specify scaling when requesting a spatial subset using a center point.

## REQUIREMENT 15

**IDENTIFIER** /req/scaling/scale-denominator-definition

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 5: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/scaling>

- The map operation SHALL support a parameter `scale-denominator` with the characteristics defined in the OpenAPI Specification 3.0 fragment:
- ```
scale-denominator:  
  name: scale-denominator  
  in: query  
  description:  
    Number of units in the real-world corresponding to one such unit on the  
    display.  
  required: false  
  style: form  
  schema:  
    type: number
```
- A The `scale-denominator` value SHALL be interpreted as the number of real-world units corresponding to one of the same unit on the map (as printed or displayed), considering only the local

REQUIREMENT 15

subset of the map being returned, based on the selected (e.g., from display resolution requirements class) or default (0.28 mm/pixel) display resolution.

- C The implementation SHALL establish the correspondence between real-world units and pixel units based on the equation: $\text{physicalMetersPerPixel} = (\text{mm-per-pixel} / 1000 \text{ mm/m}) * \text{scale-denominator}$, where the *physicalMetersPerPixel* are not necessarily the same as the CRS units (even if those units are expressed in meters) for the region of that CRS consisting of the map subset being returned.
- D An HTTP 4xx error SHALL be returned if the scale-denominator parameter is used together with width and/or height and the implementation does not declare conformance to the *spatial subsetting* requirements class (which specifies that the width and height parameters can also take on a subsetting role).
- E An HTTP 4xx error SHALL be returned if the scale-denominator parameter is used together with width and/or height as well as a bbox (or equivalent subset parameter for a spatial dimension).
- F If the scale-denominator parameter is omitted, the implementation SHALL compute it as needed (for purposes such as applying scale-dependent symbology rules) based on the default or selected dimensions, display resolution, and the spatial subset of the map to return.
- G For implementations also supporting "Subsetting", when the spatial subset of the map is not specified in the request, the scale-denominator value (default or specified) SHALL be used to compute this bounding box, taking into consideration the display resolution as well as the default or specified dimensions.

RECOMMENDATION 9

IDENTIFIER /rec/scaling/symbology

- A An implementation serving dynamically rendered maps with styling capabilities SHOULD consider the requested or computed scale in applying scale-dependent symbology rules.

11.2.3. Response

A successful GET response is described in the Maps API core class (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core>)

RECOMMENDATION 10

IDENTIFIER /rec/scaling/map-success-scale

- A The resolution of the content represented in the map SHOULD be consistent with the width and height of the viewport indicated and should consider the display resolution (0.28 mm/pixel, unless

RECOMMENDATION 10

the mm-per-pixel parameter is used) when applying symbology rules. These considerations should also be applied when simplifying the geometries for a vector format, such as KML or SVG.

11.2.4. Error conditions

A general summary of the HTTP status codes can be found in [OGC API – Features – Part 1: Core, version 1.0](#) as well as in the [OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core Standard](#).

If the values of width or height parameters are out-of-range, the status code of the response will be 413 (Payload too big). If a map is not provided due to lack of data in the area, the status code of the response will be 204 or 404.

11.3. Scale and aspect ratio considerations (informative)

Since all parameters for map requests are optional, implementations must fill in missing parameters by using default values or computing appropriate values based on the parameters provided by the client and the specifics of the resource for which a map is being retrieved. Implementations supporting the “Scaling” requirements class should compute these values in a way that respects the scale of the map in all dimensions, and thus the aspect ratio of physical features being represented.

For a non-global map, and for implementations supporting both “Scaling” and “Subsetting” where clients can request a subset of the map for a small local region, implementations should consider the **local** scale of the map. For example, the applicable scale at the center, or most equatorial latitude of the map. This is as opposed to the global scale (e.g., at the equator). In addition, implementations should aim for the map scale to apply evenly to all dimensions. Consider a CRS such as Plate Carrée projection (CRS84 or EPSG:4326). When filling in an unspecified bbox and/or width and height parameters, this is possible by applying a different linear scaling for the horizontal and vertical dimensions between the CRS units and the pixel dimensions, based on the most equatorial latitude included in the subset.

Another example is using a World Mercator projection (EPSG:3395). Although the CRS unit is “meters”, they are only true meters at the equator. When computing a bounding box extending away from a center and a scale-denominator, the ratio between the CRS unit meters and true physical meters should be considered in order to accurately reflect the requested scale.

The ideal aspect ratio to maintain is the `physical_width / physical_height = width / height`, whereas `physical_width` and `physical_height` refer to the length of features in the horizontal and vertical dimensions respectively, and `width` and `height` are the dimensions of the returned map in pixels.

In the case of a Plate Carrée CRS, a simple way to accurately reflect the two-dimensional scale is to use the most equatorial latitude contained in the map response as the standard parallel of the equirectangular projection. This effectively implies scaling the horizontal distances of the

Plate Carrée projection (assuming a standard parallel at 0°N) units by the cosine of that most equatorial latitude in order to get a more accurate physical horizontal distance.

In the case of a World Mercator CRS, an implementation could compute the number of CRS units separating one degree of longitude at the center latitude and compare that with the actual number of physical meters, based on the $\cos(\text{lat})$ scaling mentioned above, and the length of a degree in meters (WGS84 semi-major axis of $6,378,137 \text{ m} * \pi / 180$, or $111,319.4907932735805 \text{ m}$).

For slightly more accurate calculations, the WGS84 ellipsoid, can be taken into account using the following polynomial equations (from [Wikipedia](#)):

```
metersPerDegLat = 111132.92 - 559.82 * cos(2*lat) + 1.175 * cos(4*lat) - 0.0023  
* cos(6*lat)  
metersPerDegLon = 111412.84 * cos(lat) - 93.5 * cos(3*lat) + 0.118 * cos(5*lat)
```

If maintaining the aspect ratio between physical units proves too difficult, implementations could fall back to maintaining the CRS unit aspect ratio instead. This way they ensure that $(\text{maxx} - \text{minx}) / (\text{maxy} - \text{miny}) = \text{width} / \text{height}$, where minx , miny are the lower bounds of the output CRS unit space in the returned map, maxx , maxy the upper bounds of that output CRS unit space on the map, and width and height are the dimensions of the returned map in pixels.

When neither width nor height is provided or implied, a good practical approach is to default to a reasonable size which is neither too low resolution, nor requiring too much computation power from the server.

When only one of the two dimension parameters is provided and no specific bounding box is requested, the value of the other could be used to return a square map by default.

When a bounding box is requested, the other dimension should be computed so as to preserve the aspect ratio.

When both dimensions are provided, but no bounding box, those dimensions should be used together with the default or requested center, and the scale denominator should be used to compute the bounding box.

Refer to the guidance for implementers provided in a section of the overview on the interactions of subsetting and scaling parameters. This includes the specific combinations of parameters that can be provided based on which requirements classes are implemented, and which parameter assume default values or should be computed in each case.

When bbox, width and height are all provided, as in implementations of the WMS Standard, the client enforces a specific aspect ratio, and these recommendations are not relevant. However, in general circumstances (e.g., 2D representations on a screen), the client should try to provide parameters that preserve the aspect ratio.

CAUTION

Due to the inherent difficulty in implementing the computations correctly for all CRSs and some degree of variability based on how these calculations are performed, implementations may compute missing parameters for the same request differently. Clients should therefore always consider the Content-Bbox: response header and the actual dimensions of the returned map

when georeferencing and displaying images returned by the Maps API. For identical responses to the same request across different implementations, clients should always provide a `bbox` (or its subset equivalent), `width` and `height` parameters (as in classic WMS requests). This is rather than the `scale-denominator` and `center` parameters, which are primarily intended for convenience directly accessing a Maps API, such as from a Web browser. For the purpose of overlaying map responses from different implementations, a client which does not itself georeference the output based on the `Content-Bbox`: response header should always request maps using the `bbox`, `width` and `height` parameters.

See also detailed step-by-step examples in an annex of computations to infer dimensions and infer bounding boxes based on specified parameters.

11.4. Service Metadata

The OGC API – Common Standard describes a mechanism to expose service-metadata for the API. See [Annex B.4 of OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core \(OGC 19-072\)](#).

RECOMMENDATION 11

IDENTIFIER /rec/scaling/max-width-height

The service metadata may include a maximum width, maximum height and maximum product of both indicating what are the maximum values that the server will accept to create the map. Clients should not request a map subset with a width or a height greater than these limits and if they do, they should expect that the server will not be able to create a map. These characteristics are defined as (shown as an OpenAPI Specification 3.0 fragment):

A

```
x-OGC-limits:  
  type: object  
  properties:  
    maps:  
      type: object  
      properties:  
        maxWidth:  
          type: integer  
          description:  
            Maximum width parameter value. If absent the server imposes no  
            limit.  
          example: 2048  
        maxHeight:  
          type: integer  
          description:  
            Maximum height parameter value. If absent the server imposes no  
            limit.  
          example: 2048  
        maxPixels:  
          type: integer  
          description:  
            Maximum product of width and height parameter values. If absent  
            the server imposes no limit.
```

RECOMMENDATION 11

example: 4194304

A Maps API implementation instance may specify the maximum width and height by adding a `maximum` property to the `width` and `height` parameter definition in the OpenAPI definition document as in this OpenAPI Specification 3.0 fragment:

```
B   width:  
     name: width  
     in: query  
     description:  
       Width of the viewport to present the response in pixel units (the map subset).  
     required: false  
     style: form  
     explode: false  
     schema:  
       type: number  
       maximum: 2048  
   height:  
     name: height  
     in: query  
     description:  
       Height of the viewport to present the response in pixel units (the map subset).  
     required: false  
     style: form  
     explode: false  
     schema:  
       type: number  
       maximum: 2048
```

C In the absence of the `maxWidth` or `maxPixels`, the client will assume that there is no limit in the parameter `width`. In the absence of the `maxHeight` or `maxPixels`, the client will assume that there is no limit in the parameter `height`.

NOTE 1: This mimics the `maxWidth` and `maxHeight` elements in the WMS 1.3 *GetCapabilities* document.

NOTE 2: Service metadata can be embedded in the `info` section of the OpenAPI instance or in an independent document linked to the landing page with the `rel="service-meta"`

NOTE 3: The attributes `maxWidth`, `maxHeight` and `maxPixels` are intended to limit server workload, by providing limitations in the size of the output. If the `width` and `height` limits are defined in relation to the size of a common device screen, Maps API implementations should consider that new devices are being built with more and more pixels and a reasonable limit from the current year may be too restrictive for devices emerging in the next year.

Example – Example of the OpenAPI service metadata section

```
info:  
  title: My Web API  
  version: 1.0.0  
  description: This example shows population of an OpenAPI Info element with identifying  
    metadata for both the service and the service provider.  
  x-OGC-limits:  
    maps:  
      maxWidth: 2048  
      maxHeight: 2048
```

maxPixels: 10000000

12

REQUIREMENTS CLASS “DISPLAY RESOLUTION”

REQUIREMENTS CLASS “DISPLAY RESOLUTION”

12.1. Overview

REQUIREMENTS CLASS 6: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘DISPLAY RESOLUTION’

IDENTIFIER	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/display-resolution
TARGET TYPE	Web API
CONFORMANCE CLASS	Conformance class A.6: https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/display-resolution
PREREQUISITE	Requirements class 1: https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core
NORMATIVE STATEMENTS	Requirement 16: /req/display-resolution/mm-per-pixel-definition Requirement 17: /req/display-resolution/map-success

The Display Resolution requirements class describes how to specify an accurate physical size of a pixel for the target display device or medium with a mm-per-pixel parameter. This is instead of a default 0.28 mm/pixel and allows applying symbology rules correctly. The physical pixel size is considered for establishing the relationship between the scale of the map and its output dimensions in pixels.

12.2. Map Operation

The Display Resolution requirements class specifies the mm-per-pixel parameter to accurately interpret scale denominators and symbology rules.

12.2.1. Parameter **mm-per-pixel**

By themselves, the width and height of the image to be presented on the display device are not enough to determine the scale of a map. This is because these values are provided in pixel units. Conversely, the scale-denominator does not specify the size in pixels of a map for a given spatial area. The scale, being the ratio between the size of features as represented on the map

and the physical size of the same features, also depends on the size of display device pixels in physical units. Knowing the size of these pixels supports accurately establishing the physical size of features as they will be presented on the display device and therefore compute the scale correctly by dividing the actual size of the display device in physical units (e.g., millimeters) by the actual size of the extent of the map (e.g., in meters). When this parameter is not specified, a default 0.28 mm/pixel is assumed (as standardized in WMS).

REQUIREMENT 16

IDENTIFIER /req/display-resolution/mm-per-pixel-definition

INCLUDED IN Requirements class 6: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/display-resolution>

The map operation SHALL support a parameter `mm-per-pixel` with the characteristics defined in the OpenAPI Specification 3.0 fragment:

A `mm-per-pixel:`
 `name: mm-per-pixel`
 `in: query`
 `description:`
 `size (in millimeters) of a pixel of the rendering device that presents`
 `the response.`
 `required: false`
 `style: form`
 `schema:`
 `type: number`

B The implementation SHALL interpret `mm-per-pixel` as the size (in millimeters) of a rendering device pixel.

C An HTTP 4xx error SHALL be returned if the `mm-per-pixel` value is not a positive number.

D If the parameter `mm-per-pixel` is not provided, the server SHALL assume that the pixel size is 0.28 millimeters (90.71 pixels per inch).

NOTE 1: The definition of 0.28 as a default value is the same value as used in the Web Map Service (WMS) 1.3.0 Standard (OGC 06-042) and in the Symbology Encoding (SE) Implementation Specification 1.1.0 (OGC 05-077r4) that was later adopted by WMTS 1.0 (OGC 07-057r7) and 2D-TMS OGC (17-083r4). 0.28 mm was the actual pixel size of a common display from 2005. This value is still being used as reference, even if current display devices are built with much smaller pixel sizes.

NOTE 2: Since the 1980s, the Microsoft Windows operating system has set its default standard display pixels per inch (PPI) to 96. This value results in an approximate value of 0.264 mm per pixel. The similarity of this value with the actual 0.28 mm adopted in this Standard can create some confusion.

NOTE 3: Modern display devices (screens) have pixels so small that operating systems allow for defining a presentation scale factor bigger than one (e.g. 150%). In these circumstances, the actual size of the device pixels is not the same as the size used by the operating system.

With this parameter, the server has information on the physical size of the map as presented on a display device or printed and can therefore apply styling and symbology rules accordingly. For example, if the server receives a very small value, the server could decide to represent linear elements wider than for normal values, preventing the creation of a representation of linear features that is going to result in lines that are too thin to be correctly perceived.

12.2.2. Response

A successful GET response is described in the core class (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core>)

REQUIREMENT 17

IDENTIFIER /req/display-resolution/map-success

INCLUDED IN Requirements class 6: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/display-resolution>

- A** For an implementation supporting the Maps API *scaling* requirements class, the implementation SHALL use the mm-per-pixel value instead of the default 0.28 mm/pixel when establishing the relationship between the dimensions of the output image, the scale and the spatial extent of the map.
- B** The mm-per-pixel value SHALL be used instead of the default 0.28 mm/pixel when establishing scale for the purpose of applying styling and symbology rules to the map. For example, this needs to be considered for scale-dependent rule selectors as well as for graphical units in real world units (e.g., meters) or display units (e.g., millimeters).

12.2.3. Error conditions

A general summary of the HTTP status codes can be found in [OGC API – Features – Part 1: Core, version 1.0](#) as well as in [OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core Standard](#).

If the values of the mm-per-pixel parameters are out-of-range, the status code of the response will be 400.

13

REQUIREMENTS CLASS “SPATIAL SUBSETTING”

REQUIREMENTS CLASS “SPATIAL SUBSETTING”

13.1. Overview

REQUIREMENTS CLASS 7: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘SPATIAL SUBSETTING’

IDENTIFIER	https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/spatial-subsetting
TARGET TYPE	Web API
CONFORMANCE CLASS	Conformance class A.7: https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/spatial-subsetting
PREREQUISITE	Requirements class 1: https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core Requirement 18: /req/spatial-subsetting/bbox-crs Requirement 19: /req/spatial-subsetting/subset-crs Requirement 20: /req/spatial-subsetting/center-crs Requirement 21: /req/spatial-subsetting/bbox-definition Requirement 22: /req/spatial-subsetting/subset-definition Requirement 23: /req/spatial-subsetting/subset-response Requirement 24: /req/spatial-subsetting/center-definition Requirement 25: /req/spatial-subsetting/width-height Requirement 26: /req/spatial-subsetting/map-success
NORMATIVE STATEMENTS	Requirement 18: /req/spatial-subsetting/bbox-crs Requirement 19: /req/spatial-subsetting/subset-crs Requirement 20: /req/spatial-subsetting/center-crs Requirement 21: /req/spatial-subsetting/bbox-definition Requirement 22: /req/spatial-subsetting/subset-definition Requirement 23: /req/spatial-subsetting/subset-response Requirement 24: /req/spatial-subsetting/center-definition Requirement 25: /req/spatial-subsetting/width-height Requirement 26: /req/spatial-subsetting/map-success

The Maps API core requirements class defines the map resource. The Maps API core also defines a minimum set of metadata that enables a client application to formulate a map request. The Subsetting requirements class adds the ability to request an arbitrary 2D or 3D spatial subset of a map using either a bounding box specified using one of two equivalent syntaxes: a bbox parameter similar to the one in WMS 1.3, or a subset parameter similar to WCS 2.1. An alternative possibility is to specify a center point as well as width and/or height parameters taking into account the scale and the display resolution.

How the third (vertical) spatial dimension is applied to filter the output is left to the implementation and may depend on the nature of the data being represented and/or the negotiated output format. For example, the server could include features located within a vertical interval as part of a 2D map being rendered. In a second example, the extent of a 3D perspective view or a 3D model output would include only the subset of the vertical dimension specified. In a third example, a vertical profile could be returned for a single point or for a path across the other spatial dimensions. In this last example, the subset mechanism would likely only

be used to subset the vertical dimension, while another mechanism would be used to select an arbitrary path in the horizontal dimensions (this requirements class does not specify how to provide a path in a map request).

13.2. CRS for subsetting

In WMS 1.3 the CRS parameters had two purposes: Indicate the CRS of the data rendered in the map and the CRS of the coordinates of the bbox parameter. In the Maps API Standard, these two objectives have been separated. This section defines the CRS parameters for subsetting.

In this document the CRS for subsetting can have 3 possible values:

- <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84>
- storageCrs indicated in the description of the geospatial resource, such as the collection or dataset.
- the one indicated in the crs parameter (the one picked for the map response). This possibility is described in the “CRS” requirements class.

The CRS advertised in the collection’s spatial extent is always in <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> (for Earth centric data and as required by OGC API – Features). At least for OGC API – Maps and OGC API – Coverages, a native CRS (also called storage CRS) is defined. The Content-Crs : header (see Overview) specifies the CRS used in the response to avoid confusion.

NOTE 1: There is no obligation to provide the maps in <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84>.

NOTE 2: The collection or dataset description will contain a storageCrs property indicating the native CRS. If it is not present, then <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> is assumed. This is specified in the *Collection Map* and *Dataset Map* requirements classes.

NOTE 3: Providing the extent of the collection or dataset in its native CRS (*storage CRS*) is also required, as specified in the *Collection Map* and *Dataset Map* requirements classes.

NOTE 4: A list of supported CRSs will be provided by the collection or dataset, as specified in the *Collection Map* and *Dataset Map* requirements classes. The first CRS should be the same as the native CRS (storageCrs).

13.2.1. Parameter bbox-crs

REQUIREMENT 18

IDENTIFIER /req/spatial-subsetting/bbox-crs

REQUIREMENT 18

INCLUDED IN Requirements class 7: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/spatial-subsetting>

The map retrieval operation SHALL support a query parameter bbox-crs with the characteristics defined in the OpenAPI Specification 3.0 fragment

A
bbox-crs:
 name: bbox-crs
 in: query
 description: A URI (or safe CURIE) of the coordinate reference system for the coordinates specified in the `bbox` parameter. The valid values are [OGC:CRS84], the native (storage) CRS (if different), or the output `crs` (if specified).
 required: false
 schema:
 type: string
 example: <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84>

B For Earth centric data, the implementation SHALL support <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> as a value.

C If the bbox-crs is not indicated <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> SHALL be assumed.

D If the storage (native) CRS is known, the storage CRS as a value SHALL be supported. Other conformance classes may allow additional values (see crs parameter definition).

E The CRS expressed as URIs or as safe CURIEs SHALL be supported.

F If the bbox parameter is not used, the bbox-crs SHALL be ignored.

13.2.2. Parameter subset-crs

REQUIREMENT 19

IDENTIFIER /req/spatial-subsetting/subset-crs

INCLUDED IN Requirements class 7: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/spatial-subsetting>

The map operation SHALL support a parameter subset-crs with the characteristics defined in the OpenAPI Specification 3.0 fragment:

A
subset-crs:
 name: subset-crs
 in: query
 description: A URI (or safe CURIE) of the coordinate reference system for the coordinates specified in the `subset` parameter. The valid values are [OGC:CRS84], the native (storage) CRS (if different), or the output `crs` (if specified).
 required: false
 schema:
 type: string
 example: <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84>

REQUIREMENT 19

- B For Earth centric data, <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> SHALL be supported as a value.
- C If the subset-crs is not indicated <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> SHALL be assumed.
- D If the storage (native) CRS is known, the storage CRS SHALL be supported as a value. Other requirements classes may allow additional values (see crs parameter definition).
- E CRS expressed as URIs or as safe CURIEs SHALL be supported.
- F If no subset parameter referring to an axis of the CRS is used, the subset-crs SHALL be ignored.

13.2.3. Parameter center-crs

REQUIREMENT 20

IDENTIFIER /req/spatial-subsetting/center-crs

INCLUDED IN Requirements class 7: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/spatial-subsetting>

The map retrieval operation SHALL support a parameter center-crs with the characteristics defined in the OpenAPI Specification 3.0 fragment:

- ```
crs:
 name: center-crs
 in: query
 description: A URI (or safe CURIE) of the coordinate reference system
A for the coordinates specified in the `center` parameter. The valid values are
[OGC:CRS84], the native (storage) CRS (if different), or the output `crs` (if
specified).
 required: false
 schema:
 type: string
 example: https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84
```

- B For Earth centric data, <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> SHALL be supported as a value.
- C If the center-crs is not used, <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> SHALL be assumed.
- D If the storage (native) CRS is known, the storage CRS SHALL be supported as a value. Other requirements classes may allow additional values (see crs parameter definition).
- E CRS expressed as URIs or as safe CURIEs SHALL be supported.
- F If no center parameter is used, the center-crs SHALL be ignored.

**NOTE 1:** For clarification, the default CRS of the bbox, center and subset spatial subsetting parameters is <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> and the default output CRS of the map is its native (storage) CRS.

**NOTE 2:** The center-crs, subset-crs and bbox-crs are defined identically except they are affecting center, subset and bbox parameters respectively.

### 13.2.4. CURIE permission

#### PERMISSION 3

**IDENTIFIER** /per/spatial-subsetting/crs-curie

**A** For the center-crs, bbox-crs and subset-crs query parameters, an unsafe CURIE without square brackets MAY be supported by the implementation.

**NOTE:** This makes the notation compatible with WMS.

## 13.3. Subsetting coordinates

---

### 13.3.1. Parameter bbox

The bbox parameter defines how to subset a map using a bounding box (in bbox-crs coordinates). This parameter selects a spatial region consisting of any pixels of the map whose area is contained or intersects with the specified bounding box. Individual pixels (including the ones in the four corners of the map) occupy an area on the ground (unlike some coverage whose cell values represent an infinitely small point). The bounding box describing the spatial content of the map (e.g., in the collection description) will go around the “outside” of the pixels of the map, rather than through the centers of the map’s border pixels. This is also true for the description of a coverage whose cells represent a value for an area, which may be available as both *Maps* as well as through OGC API – *Coverages*, allowing to offer them both from the same OGC API collection. For example, a global dataset will always be described using -180 to 180 longitude bounds.

#### REQUIREMENT 21

**IDENTIFIER** /req/spatial-subsetting/bbox-definition

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 7: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/spatial-subsetting>

## REQUIREMENT 21

The map operation SHALL support a parameter bbox with a comma-separated list of four or six floating point numbers.

If the bounding box consists of six numbers, the first three numbers are the coordinates of the lower bound corner of a three-dimensional bounding box and the last three are the coordinates of the upper bound corner. The axis order is determined by the bbox-crs parameter value or longitude and latitude if the parameter is missing (<https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> axis order for a 2D bounding box, <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84h> for a 3D bounding box). For example in <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> the order is left\_long, lower\_lat, right\_long, upper\_lat.

with the characteristics defined in the OpenAPI Specification 3.0 fragment:

```
bbox:
 name: bbox
 in: query
 description:
 Bounding box of the rendered map. The bounding box is provided as four
 or six coordinates
```

A

- \* Lower left corner, coordinate axis 1
- \* Lower left corner, coordinate axis 2
- \* Minimum value, coordinate axis 3 (optional)
- \* Upper right corner, coordinate axis 1
- \* Upper right corner, coordinate axis 2
- \* Maximum value, coordinate axis 3 (optional)

The coordinate reference system and axis order of the values are indicated in the `bbox-crs` parameter or if the parameter is missing in <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84>

```
required: false
schema:
 type: array
 oneOf:
 - minItems: 4
 maxItems: 4
 - minItems: 6
 maxItems: 6
 items:
 type: number
 format: double
 style: form
 explode: false
```

B

If the bbox parameter is used together with the center and/or with a subset parameter including any of the dimensions corresponding to those of the map bounding box, the server SHALL return a 4xx client error.

**NOTE:** The bbox uses the comma (",") as the separator between the coordinates. Additional white space will not be used to delimit list items. The comma character should not be escaped (IETF RFC 2396).

Example: bbox=-180,-90,180,90&bbox-crs=[OGC:CRS84]

Example of a 3D bounding box: bbox=-180,-90,10000,180,90,12000&bbox-crs=[OGC:CRS84h]

### 13.3.2. Parameter subset

The subset parameter is a common building block used to select a subset of a geospatial resource shared with other OGC API Standards. This can be specified as an interval between lower and higher bound values or as a single value. An example of an interval is “between 10.0 and 20.0 degrees of latitude” `subset=Lat(10:20)`. An example of single value is “150 meters above mean sea level” `subset=h(150)`. The dimensions that can be used within the value specified for this parameter, in the context of this particular requirements class, are the abbreviations for the spatial axes specified in the CRS definition.

The subset parameter is defined as follows:

#### REQUIREMENT 22

**IDENTIFIER** /req/spatial-subsetting/subset-definition

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 7: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/spatial-subsetting>

The implementation SHALL support a subset parameter conforming to the following Augmented Backus Naur Form (ABNF) fragment:

```
A SubsetSpec = "subset" "=" axisName "(" intervalOrSingle ")"
 intervalOrSingle = interval / single
 interval = low ":" high
 low = single
 high = single
 single = number
```

Where:

  `axisName` is an abbreviation identifying an axis starting by a lowercase or uppercase letter A-Z, optionally followed by any number of alphanumeric characters  
  `number` is an integer or floating-point number.

**B** Axis names Lat and Lon SHALL be supported for geographic CRS and E and N for projected CRS, which are to be interpreted as the best matching spatial axis in the CRS definition.

**C** If a third spatial dimension is supported (if the resource's spatial extent bounding box is three dimensional), the implementation SHALL also support a h dimension. This is the elevation above the ellipsoid in EPSG:4979 or CRS84h for geographic CRS and z for projected CRS, which are to be interpreted as the vertical axis in the CRS definition.

**D** A 4xx error status code SHALL be returned if an axis name in the subset parameter value does not correspond to one of the axes of the subsetting CRS<sup>2</sup>.

**E** If the *interval* values fall entirely outside the range of valid values defined for the identified axis, a 204 or 404 status code SHALL be returned.

**F** For a CRS where an axis can wrap around, such as subsetting across the dateline (anti-meridian) in a geographic CRS, a *low* value greater than *high* SHALL be supported to indicate an extent crossing that wrapping point.

## REQUIREMENT 22

|   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| G | Coordinates SHALL be interpreted as values for the named axis of the CRS specified in the subset-crs parameter value or in <a href="https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84">https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84</a> ( <a href="https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84h">https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84h</a> for vertical dimension) if the subset-crs parameter is missing. |
| H | If the subset parameter including any of the dimensions corresponding to those of the map bounding box is used with a bbox and/or center parameter, the server SHALL return a 4xx error.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| I | Multiple subset parameters SHALL be interpreted, as if all dimension subsetting values were provided in a single subset parameter (comma separated) <sup>1</sup> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|   | <sup>1</sup> Example: subset=Lat(-90:90)&subset=Lon(-180:180) is equivalent to subset=Lat(-90:90),Lon(-180:180)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|   | <sup>2</sup> Note that this is only valid of the spatial dimensions. The 'additional' dimensions rely on the names of the extent of the collection.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

**NOTE 1:** A subset parameter for <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> will read as subset=Lon(left\_lon:right\_lon),Lat(lower\_lat:upper\_lat).

**NOTE 2:** When the *interval* values fall partially outside of the range of valid values defined by the CRS for the identified axis, the service is expected to return the non-empty portion of the resource resulting from the subset.

**NOTE 3:** For the operation of returning a map, there normally is no value in preserving dimensionality, therefore a *slicing* operation (using the *point* notation) is usually equivalent to a *trimming* operation (using the *interval* notation) when the low and high bounds of an interval are the same. Therefore, use of the point notation is encouraged in these cases.

**NOTE 4:** For typical 2D map requests, a trimming operation (interval) is always used (never a single slicing value) for the dimensions corresponding to the latitude (or northing) and longitude (or easting) dimensions, while a slicing or trimming operation for a third vertical dimension may be provided, where that third dimension is flattened on the map. For a response format where the content can actually be in three dimensions, an interval for the third dimension would not need to be flattened. In the case of more specialized maps, such as a vertical profile, or a temporal graph for a vegetation index at a particular spatial location, a slicing operation with single values might be appropriate for all spatial dimensions.

While the processing of the subset parameter is specific to the resource and operation for which it is applied, there is a general set of requirements which all implementations must address.

## REQUIREMENT 23

**IDENTIFIER** /req/spatial-subsetting/subset-response

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 7: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/spatial-subsetting>

## REQUIREMENT 23

- A Only the part of the resource that falls within the bounds of the subset interval and/or corresponds to the single point value SHALL be returned.

## RECOMMENDATION 12

**IDENTIFIER** /rec/spatial-subsetting/subset-crs-axis-names

- A The names of the axis SHOULD be the abbreviated names of the axis in the CRS definition (e.g. the ones defined in the EPSG database).
- B 'e' (in lowercase), 'X' (lowercase/uppercase) or 'Easting' (lowercase/uppercase) SHOULD be interpreted as synonymous of 'E'.
- C 'n' (in lowercase) or 'Y' (lowercase/uppercase) or 'Northing' (lowercase/uppercase) SHOULD be interpreted as synonymous of 'N'.
- D 'Long' (lowercase/uppercase) or 'Longitude' SHOULD be interpreted as synonymous of 'Lon'.
- E 'Latitude' SHOULD be interpreted as synonymous of 'Lat'.

### 13.3.3. Parameter center, width and height

The center parameter defines the center point of the map in the center-crs coordinates from which the width and height parameters will define a subset, taking into consideration the scale and display resolution of the map.

## REQUIREMENT 24

**IDENTIFIER** /req/spatial-subsetting/center-definition

- INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 7: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/spatial-subsetting>
- A A center parameter SHALL be supported to specify the center of the subset of the map to include, with coordinates in the CRS specified in the center-crs parameter value or in <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> if the center-crs parameter is missing.
- B If the center parameter is used together with the bbox and/or with a subset parameter including any of the dimensions corresponding to those of the map bounding box, the server SHALL return a 4xx client error.

**NOTE 1:** This parameter uses the comma (",") as the separator between the coordinates. Additional white space will not be used to delimit list items. The comma character should not be escaped (IETF RFC 2396).

## REQUIREMENT 25

**IDENTIFIER** /req/spatial-subsetting/width-height

|                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>INCLUDED IN</b> | Requirements class 7: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/spatial-subsetting">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/spatial-subsetting</a>                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| A                  | When the center parameter and/or the scale-denominator parameter is used, or if the <i>scaling</i> conformance class is not supported, a width and height parameter specifying the subset of the map to return around the specified or default center of the map SHALL be supported.                                                                                         |
| B                  | The scale of the map SHALL be considered whether returning the map at a native scale or resampled (e.g., using the <i>scaling</i> conformance class <i>scale-denominator</i> parameter), as well as the display resolution (either the default 0.28 mm/pixel, or the one specified by the <i>mm-per-pixel</i> parameter of the <i>display resolution</i> conformance class). |

**NOTE 2:** Although the *scale-denominator* parameter is defined in the “Scaling” requirements class and not in “Spatial Subsetting”, implementations supporting only Spatial Subsetting are allowed (but not required) to recognize the parameter to compute width and height dimensions accordingly, together with a corresponding bounding box.

### 13.3.4. Scale and aspect ratio considerations when subsetting

For implementations not implementing “Scaling”, the map is assumed to always be returned with the same fixed aspect ratio in both its native CRS unit space and pixel space, and the same CRS unit to pixel unit scale regardless of the subset being requested.

For implementations implementing both “Scaling” and “Spatial Subsetting” requirements classes, the scaling and subsetting parameters interact somewhat intricately. Guidance for implementers is provided in a section of the overview on these interactions, including the specific combinations of parameters that can be provided based on which requirements classes are implemented, and which parameters assume default values or should be computed in each case.

The “Scaling” requirements class also includes specific guidance for scale and aspect ratio considerations.

See also examples in an annex of computations to infer dimensions and infer bounding boxes based on specified parameters.

## 13.4. Response

A successful GET response is described in the Maps API core class (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core>).

## REQUIREMENT 26

**IDENTIFIER** /req/spatial-subsetting/map-success

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 7: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/spatial-subsetting>

**A** The content of the response SHALL represent elements inside or intersecting with the spatial extent of the geographical area of the map identified with the subsetting coordinates.

Normally, the content partially outside the map bounding box will be clipped at the extent of the bounding box. This can be done efficiently when map subsets are in raster format (e.g., map tiles). However, maps containing features in vector format may not clip features that are partially outside to ensure continuity of features or for performance.

## RECOMMENDATION 13

**IDENTIFIER** /rec/spatial-subsetting/map-outside-bounds

**A** The server should try to honor the subsetting coordinates requested. For example, if the server has no data in the requested area, a map filled with the background color or transparent values based on the relevant query parameters specified should be returned. For example, if the subsetting coordinates requested are partially outside the server data, the area with no data SHOULD be filled with the background color or transparent values based on the relevant query parameters specified.

## PERMISSION 4

**IDENTIFIER** /per/spatial-subsetting/map-outside-bounds

**A** When the requested subset is outside the bounds of the requested CRS, the server MAY limit the Content-Bbox to the valid values in the CRS.

**NOTE:** As defined in the Maps API core requirements class, the Content-Bbox: and the Content-Crs: response headers report the actual bounding box of the data returned.

## 13.5. Error conditions

A general summary of the HTTP status codes can be found in [OGC API – Features – Part 1: Core, version 1.0](#) as well as in [OGC API – Common](#).

If the CRS in the parameter value bbox-crs, subset-crs or center-crs is not supported by the server for this resource, or the parameter value is out-of-range, the status code of the response

will be 400. If the map is not provided due to lack of data in the area, the status code of the response will be 204 or 404.

14

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “DATE AND TIME”

---

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “DATE AND TIME”

---

## 14.1. Overview

---

### REQUIREMENTS CLASS 8: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘DATE AND TIME’

|                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER           | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/datetime">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/datetime</a>                                                                                                                                                       |
| TARGET TYPE          | Web API                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| CONFORMANCE CLASS    | Conformance class A.8: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/datetime">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/datetime</a>                                                                                                                              |
| PREREQUISITE         | Requirements class 1: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core</a>                                                                                                                                         |
| NORMATIVE STATEMENTS | Requirement 27: /req/datetime/datetime-definition<br>Requirement 28: /req/datetime/datetime-response<br>Requirement 29: /req/datetime/subset-definition<br>Requirement 30: /req/datetime/subset-response<br>Requirement 31: /req/datetime/axis<br>Requirement 32: /req/datetime/map-success |

The Date and Time Subsetting requirements class defines the way date and time can be used as a parameter to filter the content in the map resource.

## 14.2. Describing the temporal extent

---

Depending on the type of resource, the way the temporal extent and the resolution of the datetime values that are available for the client to request are described may be different:

- For Collection maps, the collection description should specify the temporal extent of the resources. Maps can be requested inside this extent. If the extent is specified in a way that instant values are provided (e.g., by listing them or by including a resolution) then it should be possible to request maps for these instants.
- For Dataset maps, the landing page should specify the temporal extent of the dataset. Maps can be requested inside this extent.

## 14.3. datetime query parameter request and response

The datetime parameter is a common building block that is shared with other OGC API Standards.

In the context of this requirements class, the datetime parameter selects a time instant or interval of the resource for which a map is requested.

The datetime parameter is defined as follows:

### REQUIREMENT 27

**IDENTIFIER** /req/datetime/datetime-definition

**INCLUDED IN**

Requirements class 8: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/datetime>

**A**

The datetime parameter SHALL have the following characteristics (using an OpenAPI Specification 3.0 fragment):  
name: datetime  
in: query  
required: false  
schema:  
    type: string  
    style: form  
    explode: false

**B**

Temporal geometries are either a date-time value or a time interval. The parameter value SHALL conform to the following syntax (using ABNF):

```
interval-bounded = instant "/" instant
interval-bounded-start = ["]"""] "/" instant
interval-bounded-end = instant "/" ["]"""]
interval-unbounded = ["]"""] "/" ["]"""]
interval = interval-bounded / interval-bounded-start / interval-
 bounded-end / interval-unbounded
datetime = instant / interval
```

**C**

The implementation SHALL support an instant defined as specified by [RFC 3339, 5.6](#), with the exception that the server is only required to support the Z UTC time notation, and not required to support local time offsets.

**D**

Time intervals unbounded at the start or at the end SHALL be supported using a double-dot (...) or an empty string for the start/end.

While the processing of the datetime parameter is specific to the resource and operation for which it is applied, there is a general set of requirements which all implementations must address.

## REQUIREMENT 28

**IDENTIFIER** /req/datetime/datetime-response

**INCLUDED IN**

Requirements class 8: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/datetime>

- A If the datetime parameter is provided by the client and supported by the server, then only resources that have a temporal geometry that intersects the temporal information in the datetime parameter SHALL be part of the result set. If a resource has multiple temporal properties, it is the decision of the server whether only a single temporal property is used to determine the extent or all relevant temporal properties.
- B The datetime parameter SHALL match all resources in the collection that are not associated with a temporal geometry.

“Intersects” means that the time (instant or period) specified in the parameter datetime includes a timestamp that is part of the temporal geometry of the resource (again, a time instant or period). For time periods this includes the start and end time.

**NOTE:** ISO 8601-2 (Date and time – Representations for information interchange – Part 2: Extensions) distinguishes unbounded start/end timestamps (double-dot) and unknown start/end timestamps (empty string). For queries, an unknown start/end has the same effect as an unbounded start/end.

**Example 1 – A date-time:** February 12, 2018, 23:20:52 UTC:

datetime=2018-02-12T23:20:52Z

For resources with a temporal property that is a timestamp (like lastUpdate), a date-time value would match all resources where the temporal property is identical.

For resources with a temporal property that is a date or a time interval, a date-time value would match all resources where the timestamp is on that day or within the time interval.

**Example 2 – Intervals:** February 12, 2018, 00:00:00 UTC to March 18, 2018, 12:31:12 UTC:

datetime=2018-02-12T00:00:00Z/2018-03-18T12:31:12Z

February 12, 2018, 00:00:00 UTC or later:

datetime=2018-02-12T00:00:00Z/..

March 18, 2018, 12:31:12 UTC or earlier:

datetime=../2018-03-18T12:31:12Z

A template for the definition of the datetime parameter is available at [datetime.yaml](#).

## 14.4. subset=time query parameter request and response

The subset parameter is a common building block that is shared with other OGC API Standards. The subset parameter can be specified as an interval between lower and higher bound values or as a single value. An example of an interval is “between 1st of January 2021 and last day of May 2021” `subset=time("2021-01-01":"2021-05-31")`. An example of single value is “1st of January 2021 at 8am o'clock” `subset=time("2021-01-01T08:00:00")`. The time dimension can be used within the value specified for this parameter and should ideally match with the axis abbreviation specified in the CRS definition.

The subset parameter is defined as follows:

### REQUIREMENT 29

**IDENTIFIER** /req/datetime/subset-definition

|                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>INCLUDED IN</b> | Requirements class 8: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/datetime">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/datetime</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| A                  | <p>A subset parameter with the following characteristics (using an Augmented Backus Naur Form (ABNF) fragment) SHALL be supported:</p> <pre>SubsetSpec = "subset" "=" "time" "(" intervalOrSingle ")" intervalOrSingle = interval / single interval = low ":" high low = single high = single single = number / text / "*" Where: `number` is an integer or floating-point number, and `text` is some general ASCII text (such as a time and date notation in RFC 3339 section 5.6) enclosed in double quotes (`"`, ASCII code 0x42). An asterisk (`*`) can be used for `low` or `high` to indicate the minimum/ maximum value. A single asterisk can be used to indicate the high value. Support for `*` is required for time, but optional for spatial and other dimensions.</pre> |
| B                  | The implementation SHALL support an axis name time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| C                  | The implementation SHALL return a 4xx status code if the axis name is not time, is not a recommended alias for time (Time, t and T), and is not recognized in the context of another requirements class, such as spatial and general subsetting.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| D                  | If the intervalOrSingle values fall entirely outside the range of valid values defined for the identified axis, a 204 or 404 status code SHALL be returned                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| E                  | Coordinates SHALL be interpreted as values for the CRS specified in the temporal extent, or Gregorian UTC time if it is not specified in the temporal extent.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| F                  | When Gregorian UTC time is used, the implementation SHALL support time expressed using RFC 3339 section 5.6, with only support for the UTC (Z) notation required (support for local time offsets is optional), as well as the following additional partial date and time formats:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

## REQUIREMENT 29

- only a year: yyyy
- a year and a month: yyyy-mm
- a year, a month and a day: yyyy-mm-dd
- a year, a month, a day and an hour: yyyy-mm-ddThhZ
- a year, a month, a day, an hour and a minute: yyyy-mm-ddThh:mmZ

G

The implementation SHALL support a \* value indicating the earliest available time (for low) or the latest available time (for high and when used as a single time instant).

H

Multiple subset parameters SHALL be interpreted as if all dimension subsetting values were provided in a single subset parameter (comma separated)<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Example: subset=Lat(-90:90)&subset=Lon(-180:180)&subset=time("2018-02-12T23:20:52Z") is equivalent to subset=Lat(-90:90),Lon(-180:180),time("2018-02-12T23:20:52Z")

**NOTE 1:** When the `intervalOrSingle` values fall partially outside of the range of valid values defined by the CRS for the identified axis, the service is expected to return the non-empty portion of the resource resulting from the subset.

**NOTE 2:** For the operation of returning a map, there normally is no value in preserving dimensionality, therefore a *slicing* operation (using the *point* notation) is usually equivalent to a *trimming* operation (using the *interval* notation) when the low and high bounds of an interval are the same. Therefore, use of the point notation is encouraged in these cases.

**NOTE 3:** For typical 2D map requests, a slicing or trimming operation for the temporal dimension may be provided, where that temporal dimension is flattened on the map. For a response format such as a video animation, the temporal dimension would not need to be flattened. For special maps like the graph of a vegetation index over time for a particular spatial location, the temporal axis may be presented as a vertical or horizontal axis on the map.

**NOTE 4:** If no subset parameter is used for the time dimension and no datetime parameter is used, the implementation is free to return a default temporal range.

While the processing of the subset parameter is specific to the resource and operation for which it is applied, there is a general set of requirements which all implementations must address.

## REQUIREMENT 30

**IDENTIFIER** /req/datetime/subset-response

**INCLUDED IN**

Requirements class 8: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/datetime>

A

Only that part of the resource that falls within the bounds of the subset expression SHALL be returned.

## REQUIREMENT 31

**IDENTIFIER** /req/datetime/axis

**INCLUDED  
IN**

Requirements class 8: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/datetime>

**A**

To subset a generic time dimension, the server SHALL support “time” as axisname in the subset parameter

**Example 1 – A date-time (subset):** February 12, 2018, 23:20:52 UTC:

```
subset=time("2018-02-12T23:20:52Z")
```

For resources with a temporal property that is a timestamp (such as lastUpdate), a date-time value would match all resources where the temporal property is identical.

For resources with a temporal property that is a date or a time interval, a date-time value would match all resources where the timestamp is on that day or within the time interval.

**Example 2 – Intervals (subset):** February 12, 2018, 00:00:00 UTC to March 18, 2018, 12:31:12 UTC:

```
subset=time("2018-02-12T00:00:00Z":"2018-03-18T12:31:12Z")
```

February 12, 2018, 00:00:00 UTC or later:

```
subset=time("2018-02-12T00:00:00Z":*)
```

March 18, 2018, 12:31:12 UTC or earlier:

```
subset=time(*:"2018-03-18T12:31:12Z")
```

## 14.5. Actual date & time response header

### RECOMMENDATION 14

**IDENTIFIER** /rec/datetime/actual-datetime

**A**

The server SHOULD add an HTTP header with OGCAPI-datetime as a name and a temporal geometry as a value, to indicate the instant or the temporal interval of the content of the resource.

The temporal geometries value shall conform to the following syntax (using ABNF):

```
interval = instant "/" instant
datetime = instant / interval
```

**STATEMENT** The syntax of instant is specified by [RFC 3339, 5.6](#).

## 14.6. Closest date & time permission

---

### PERMISSION 5

**IDENTIFIER** /per/datetime/closest

- A** In case the requested map is not available in the exact requested datetime the closest or last previous time for which data is available MAY be returned by the server.

**NOTE:** An Earth Observation use case where this permission is useful is to allow retrieving a map of the last datetime where imagery is available, considering that a certain geographic area may only be observed at an interval of “every few days” and availability may be irregular and conditioned by clouds.

## 14.7. Response

---

A successful GET response is described in the Maps API core class (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core>).

### REQUIREMENT 32

**IDENTIFIER** /req/datetime/map-success

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 8: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/datetime>

- A** The content of that response SHALL be consistent with the requested datetime.

## 14.8. Error conditions

---

A general summary of the HTTP status codes can be found in [OGC API – Features – Part 1: Core, version 1.0](#) as well as in the [OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core Standard](#).

If the parameter value for datetime is outside the domain of the collections, the status code of the response will be 400.

If the request returns no data (e.g., in combination with other types of subsetting), the status code of the response will be 204 or 404. If permission /per/datetime/closest is implemented, this situation is unlikely to occur.

15

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “GENERAL SUBSETTING”

---

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “GENERAL SUBSETTING”

---

## 15.1. Overview

---

### REQUIREMENTS CLASS 9: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘GENERAL SUBSETTING’

|                      |                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER           | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/general-subsetting">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/general-subsetting</a>                          |
| TARGET TYPE          | Web API                                                                                                                                                                            |
| CONFORMANCE CLASS    | Conformance class A.9: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/general-subsetting">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/general-subsetting</a> |
| PREREQUISITE         | Requirements class 1: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core</a>                                |
| NORMATIVE STATEMENTS | Requirement 33: /req/general-subsetting/uniform-additional-dimensions<br>Requirement 34: /req/general-subsetting/subset-definition                                                 |

The General Subsetting requirements class defines the way a subset of the map resource in additional dimensions beyond spatial and temporal can be specified using the `subset` parameter. This functionality is defined as common building blocks shared with other OGC API Standards.

## 15.2. Describing the extent of the additional dimensions

---

When implementing the General Subsetting requirements class, additional dimensions included in an extent description must use a uniform approach to describe the lower and upper bounds of those dimensions based on the `intervals` property. An example is found in an OGC API collection description response described in OGC API – Common – Part 2 and follows the JSON schema in <https://schemas.opengis.net/ogcapi/maps/part1/1.0/openapi/schemas/common-geodata/collectionDesc.yaml>. This is the same as with the temporal dimension.

## REQUIREMENT 33

**IDENTIFIER** /req/general-subsetting/uniform-additional-dimensions

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 9: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/general-subsetting>

**A** Wherever applicable (e.g., the collection or dataset description), the extent of any additional dimension(s) beyond temporal and spatial SHALL be described in a way similar to the temporal dimension, using the name of the dimension as a key and an object as value, with that object containing an interval property, a URI for the semantic definition, a unit of measure if applicable, and a grid definition if applicable, as specified in [extent-uad.yaml](#).

**NOTE:** The subset-crs mentioned in Spatial subsetting can only be used in combination with a spatial subset.

### 15.3. subset query parameter

The subset parameter can be specified as an interval between lower and higher bound values or as a single value. An example of an interval is “between 500.0 and 1013.0 hPa” subset=pressure(500:1013). An example of a single value is “750 hPa” subset=pressure(750). The dimensions that can be used within the value specified for this parameter are the axis abbreviations specified in the CRS definition. All additional dimensions listed in the extent as valid dimensions to be used with the subset parameter must be supported.

## REQUIREMENT 34

**IDENTIFIER** /req/general-subsetting/subset-definition

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 9: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/general-subsetting>

A subset parameter with the following characteristics (using an Augmented Backus Naur Form (ABNF) fragment) SHALL be supported:

```
SubsetSpec = "subset" "=" axisName "(" intervalOrSingle ")"
intervalOrSingle = interval / single
interval = low ":" high
low = single
high = single
single = number / text / "*"
```

**A**

Where:

`axisName` is an abbreviation identifying an axis starting by a lowercase or uppercase letter A-Z, optionally followed by any number of alphanumeric characters

`number` is an integer or floating-point number, and

`text` is some general ASCII text (such as a time and date notation in RFC 3339 section 5.6) enclosed in double-quotes (`"`, ASCII code 0x42).

An asterisk (`\*`) can be used for `low` or `high` to indicate the minimum/maximum value.

## REQUIREMENT 34

For an additional temporal dimension, a single asterisk may be supported to indicate the latest available time.  
Support for `\*` is required for time, but optional for spatial and other dimensions.

- B Any name of the *additional* dimensions in the extent of the collection SHALL be supported as an axis name.
- C A 4xx error status code SHALL be returned if an axis name does not correspond to the name of one of the *additional* dimensions in the extent of the collection, or recognized in the context of another requirements class.
- D If the *intervalOrSingle* values fall entirely outside the range of valid values defined for the identified axis, a 204 or 404 status code SHALL be returned.
- E For an axis that can wrap around, a *low* value greater than *high* SHALL be supported to indicate an extent crossing that wrapping point.
- F Multiple subset parameters SHALL be interpreted as if all dimension subsetting values were provided in a single subset parameter (comma separated)<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Example: `subset=Lat(-90:90)&subset=Lon(-180:180)&subset=atm_pressure_hpa(500)` is equivalent to `subset=Lat(-90:90),Lon(-180:180),atm_pressure_hpa(500)`

**NOTE 1:** When the *intervalOrSingle* values fall partially outside of the range of valid values defined by the CRS for the identified axis, the service is expected to return the non-empty portion of the resource resulting from the subset.

**NOTE 2:** For the operation of returning a map, there normally is no value in preserving dimensionality. Therefore, a *slicing* operation (using the *point* notation) is usually equivalent to a *trimming* operation (using the *interval* notation) when the low and high bounds of an interval are the same. Therefore, use of the point notation is encouraged in these cases.

**NOTE 3:** For typical 2D map requests, a slicing or trimming operation for additional dimensions may be provided, where those additional dimensions are flattened on the map. For a response format where an additional dimension can be preserved (e.g., atmospheric pressure represented in a 3D representation), that additional dimension would not need to be flattened. For special maps like graphs, an additional dimension may be presented as a vertical or horizontal axis on the map.

## 15.4. Response

A successful GET response is described in the Maps API core class (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core>).

## 15.5. Error conditions

---

A general summary of the HTTP status codes can be found in the [OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core Standard](#).

If the parameter value for the additional dimensions is outside the domain of the collections, the status code of the response will be 400.

Otherwise, if the request returns no data (e.g., in combination with other types of subsetting), the status code of the response will be 204 or 404.

16

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “COORDINATE REFERENCE SYSTEM”

---

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “COORDINATE REFERENCE SYSTEM”

---

## 16.1. Overview

---

### REQUIREMENTS CLASS 10: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘COORDINATE REFERENCE SYSTEM’

|                      |                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER           | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/crs">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/crs</a>                           |
| TARGET TYPE          | Web API                                                                                                                                               |
| CONFORMANCE CLASS    | Conformance class A.10: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/crs">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/crs</a> |
| PREREQUISITE         | Requirements class 1: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core</a>   |
| NORMATIVE STATEMENTS | Requirement 35: /req/crs/crs-definition<br>Requirement 36: /req/crs/map-success                                                                       |

In WMS 1.3 the CRS parameters had two purposes: To indicate the CRS of the data rendered in the map and the CRS of the coordinates of the BBOX parameter. In the Maps API Standard, these two purposes have been separated. This section describes how to request a map in a specific CRS.

For OGC API – Maps and OGC API – Coverages, a native CRS (also called a *storage CRS*) is defined. The Content-Crs: header (see Overview) specifies the CRS used in the response to avoid confusion.

## 16.2. Operation

---

The Maps API core requirements class defines how to retrieve a map. The CRS requirements class specifies parameters needed to retrieve a map in a particular output CRS.

## 16.2.1. Parameter crs

A successful GET response is described in the Maps API core class (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core>).

### REQUIREMENT 35

**IDENTIFIER** /req/crs/crs-definition

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 10: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/crs>

The map operation SHALL support a parameter crs with the characteristics defined in the OpenAPI Specification 3.0 fragment:

**A**

```
crs:
 name: crs
 in: query
 description: A coordinate reference system of the map response. A list of all supported CRS values can be found under the collection metadata.
 required: false
 schema:
 type: string
 example: https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84
```

**B** Any of the CRSs listed in the collection (or collections) description SHALL be supported. If the list of supported CRS is not present, only <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> SHALL be supported.

**C** If the spatial subsetting requirements class is supported, the bbox-crs and the subset-crs SHALL additionally support the value specified in the crs parameter.

**D** CRS expressed as URIs or as safe CURIEs SHALL be supported.

**NOTE 1:** When no crs parameters are specified, please refer to the Maps API core conformance class to know about the default CRS.

See how to determine the native (storage) CRS for the collection and the dataset in Requirements Class “Collection Map” and Requirements Class “Dataset Map” respectively.

**NOTE 2:** The default CRS of the BBOX is <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> but the default CRS of the map is the native (storage) CRS

### PERMISSION 6

**IDENTIFIER** /per/crs/crs-curie

**A** For the crs parameter, unsafe CURIE without square brackets MAY be supported by the implementation.

**NOTE 3:** This makes the notation compatible with WMS.

### 16.2.2. Response

#### REQUIREMENT 36

**IDENTIFIER** /req/crs/map-success

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 10: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/crs>

**A** The content of the map response SHALL be consistent with the requested CRS.

### 16.2.3. Error conditions

A general summary of the HTTP status codes can be found in [OGC API – Features – Part 1: Core, version 1.0](#) as well as in the [OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core Standard](#).

If the parameter value for crs is not valid for the collections, the status code of the response will be 400.

17

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “ORIENTATION”

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “ORIENTATION”

## 17.1. Overview

### REQUIREMENTS CLASS 11: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘ORIENTATION’

|                      |                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER           | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/orientation">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/orientation</a>                           |
| TARGET TYPE          | Web API                                                                                                                                                               |
| CONFORMANCE CLASS    | Conformance class A.11: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/orientation">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/orientation</a> |
| PREREQUISITE         | Requirements class 1: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core</a>                   |
| NORMATIVE STATEMENTS | Requirement 37: /req/orientation/orientation<br>Requirement 38: /req/orientation/response-headers                                                                     |

This requirements class defines the ability for clients to request a map whose content is rotated by a counterclockwise orientation specified in degrees, resulting in the viewing perspective being rotated by that same orientation in a clockwise direction.

## 17.2. Operation

### 17.2.1. Parameter `orientation`

#### REQUIREMENT 37

IDENTIFIER /req/orientation/orientation

INCLUDED IN Requirements class 11: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/orientation>

A If rotation of the map content is desired, an orientation parameter SHALL be supported that specifies the amount by which to rotate a map, expressed as counterclockwise degrees. This results in the viewing perspective being rotated by that same orientation in a clockwise direction.

## REQUIREMENT 37

- B If an orientation parameter is not specified, a zero-orientation value SHALL be assumed.
- C The orientation SHALL be applied to the map with the center of the selected spatial subset as the pivot point, or the center of the map if none is specified.
- D If an orientation parameter is used together with subset or bbox spatial subsetting parameter, the counterclockwise orientation SHALL be applied to the four corners of the clipping box associated to that subset, as if the equivalent center, width and height spatial subsetting query parameters were used instead. This avoids leaving empty corners in the final rotated map image.

### 17.2.2. Response headers

## REQUIREMENT 38

**IDENTIFIER** /req/orientation/response-headers

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 11: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/orientation>

- A For responses to a map request where the orientation query parameter was used, a response header Content-Orientation: [value in decimal degrees] corresponding to the orientation of the map SHALL be returned.
- B For responses to a map request where the orientation query parameter was used, the Content-Bbox response header SHALL reflect the bounding box in the map output CRS prior to the orientation being applied.

Example of a request and associated response headers:

#### Example 1 – Example of a request

/map?orientation=40

#### Example 2 – Example of associated response headers

Content-Crs: <<https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/EPSG/0/3995>>

Content-Orientation: 40

Content-Bbox: -10000,-4000,10000,4000

### 17.2.3. Response

A successful GET response is described in the Maps API core class (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core>).

#### **17.2.4. Error conditions**

A general summary of the HTTP status codes can be found in [OGC API – Features – Part 1: Core, version 1.0](#) as well as in the [OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core Standard](#).

If the parameter value for the orientation is not a valid orientation, the status code of the response will be 400.

18

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “CUSTOM PROJECTION CRS”

---

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “CUSTOM PROJECTION CRS”

## 18.1. Overview

### REQUIREMENTS CLASS 12: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘CUSTOM PROJECTION CRS’

|                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER           | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/projection">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/projection</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| TARGET TYPE          | Web API                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| CONFORMANCE CLASS    | Conformance class A.12: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/projection">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/projection</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| PREREQUISITE         | Requirements class 1: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| NORMATIVE STATEMENTS | Requirement 39: /req/projection/crs-proj-method<br>Requirement 40: /req/projection/crs-proj-params<br>Requirement 41: /req/projection/crs-proj-center-definition<br>Requirement 42: /req/projection/crs-datum<br>Requirement 43: /req/projection/response-headers<br>Requirement 44: /req/projection/projections-resource<br>Requirement 45: /req/projection/projections-response |

The Custom Projection CRS requirements class defines the ability for clients to specify a custom projection CRS based on parameters defining a projection operation method, values for corresponding parameters, as well as a datum. This class also provides a parameter facilitating the task of selecting a projection center across different projections, for which the relevant latitude and longitude parameters differ. Angles are specified in degrees, whereas identifiers for methods, parameters and datums can be specified as URLs or safe CURIEs. Additionally, this requirements class defines a resource at /projectionsAndDatums listing the available operation methods and their associated parameters, as well as the possible datums that can be used as values for these parameters.

## 18.2. Operation

### 18.2.1. Parameter `crs-proj-method`

The operation method refers mainly to the equations that relate geographic coordinates to projected coordinates and vice-versa.

#### REQUIREMENT 39

**IDENTIFIER** /req/projection/crs-proj-method

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 12: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/projection>

**A** A `crs-proj-method` parameter supporting selection of a projection operation method SHALL be supported.

**B** CURIEs in addition to URI to specify the projection method SHALL be supported.

### 18.2.2. Parameter `crs-proj-params`

The operation method may have some parameters, such as the standard parallel, to set. This query parameter supports setting those values. In some simple cases this query parameter might not be necessary, and clients can consider using `crs-proj-center` instead.

#### REQUIREMENT 40

**IDENTIFIER** /req/projection/crs-proj-params

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 12: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/projection>

**A** A `crs-proj-params` parameter SHALL be supported that enables selection of one or more values for operation method parameters, with values in between parentheses ( ) following the CURIE (or URI) of a projection parameter, and different parameters separated by value. For example, `crs-proj-params=[epsg-parameter:8823](40),[epsg-parameter:8824](90)`.

**B** In addition to CURIEs, URIs to specify the projection parameters SHALL be supported.

### 18.2.3. Parameter `crs-proj-center`

To facilitate the task of centering a custom projection on the area of interest, with parameters varying greatly between projections, the `crs-proj-center` parameter automatically sets the most appropriate parameters for the specified center latitude and longitude.

#### REQUIREMENT 41

**IDENTIFIER** /req/projection/crs-proj-center-definition

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 12: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/projection>

**A** A `crs-proj-center` parameter of the form `Lat(centerLat),Lon(centerLon)` SHALL be supported to facilitate the selection of the most relevant projection parameters to center a custom projection.

The projection-center Lat value SHALL be mapped to the first matching operation method parameter available for the selected operation method of the projection query parameter, in this order:

- [epsg-parameter:8832] Latitude of standard parallel (PROJ: `lat_ts`)
- [epsg-parameter:8823] Latitude of first standard parallel, if only a single standard parallel can be set — i.e., no [epsg-parameter:8824] parameter is available (PROJ: `lat_ts`)
- [epsg-parameter:8801] Latitude of natural origin (PROJ: `lat_0`)
- [epsg-parameter:8811] Latitude of projection center (PROJ: `lat_0`)

The projection-center Lon value SHALL be mapped to the first matching operation method parameter available for the selected operation method of the projection query parameter, in this order:

- [epsg-parameter:8802] Longitude of natural origin (PROJ: `lon_0`)
- [epsg-parameter:8812] Longitude of projection center (PROJ: `lon_0`)
- [epsg-parameter:8833] Longitude of origin (PROJ: `lon_0`)

**NOTE:** For some projections where there is not a clear single center latitude parameter, such as those with multiple standard parallels, clients should use `crs-proj-params` to unambiguously set each parameter instead.

### 18.2.4. Parameter `crs-datum`

#### REQUIREMENT 42

**IDENTIFIER** /req/projection/crs-datum

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 12: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/projection>

## REQUIREMENT 42

- A A crs-datum parameter as a URI allowing to select a datum for the output CRS SHALL be supported.
- B CURIEs in addition to URI to specify the datum parameter SHALL be supported.
- C If a crs-datum parameter is not specified, the native (storage) CRS datum SHALL be assumed (the WGS84 ensemble [epsg-datum:6326] datum is assumed if the native CRS is not declared).

### 18.2.5. Response headers

## REQUIREMENT 43

**IDENTIFIER** /req/projection/response-headers

- INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 12: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/projection>
- A For responses to a map request where the crs-proj-method query parameter was used, a response header Content-Crs-Method: <[URI]> including the URI of the projection operation method SHALL be returned.
  - B A response header Content-Crs-Method-Params: <URI>=[value]; ... SHALL be returned. This includes the URI of the projection operation parameters and its value for each parameter specified using the crs-proj-method or crs-proj-center query parameters.
  - C For responses to a map request where the crs-datum query parameter was used, a response header Content-Crs-Datum: <[URI]> corresponding to the URI of the projection operation method SHALL be returned.
  - D For responses to a map request specifying the crs-proj-method query parameter, a Content-Crs response header SHALL NOT be included.
  - E For responses to a map request specifying the crs-proj-method query parameter, the CRS of the Content-Bbox response header coordinates SHALL be in the custom CRS defined by this operation method and its parameters.

Example of a request and associated response headers:

#### Example 1 – Example of a request

/map?  
crs-proj-method=[epsg-method:9840]&  
crs-proj-center=Lat(30),Lon(40)&  
crs-datum=[epsg-datum:6326]

#### Example 2 – Example of associated response headers

Content-Crs-Method: <<https://www.opengis.net/def/method/EPSG/0/9840>>  
Content-Crs-Method-Params: <<https://www.opengis.net/def/parameter/EPSG/0/8801>>=30; <<https://www.opengis.net/def/parameter/EPSG/0/8802>>=40  
Content-Crs-Datum: <<https://www.opengis.net/def/datum/EPSG/0/6326>>

## 18.2.6. Response

A successful GET response is described in the Maps API core class (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core>).

## 18.2.7. Error conditions

A general summary of the HTTP status codes can be found in [OGC API – Features – Part 1: Core, version 1.0](#) as well as in the [OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core Standard](#).

If the parameter value for the parameters is not valid, the status code of the response will be 400.

## 18.3. Available projections

### 18.3.1. Available projections operation

The resource at /projectionsAndDatums supports a GET operation, with JSON as an available representation, returning a list of the supported projection operation methods and their associated parameters, as well as a list of available datums, applying to all map retrieval operations of the API.

#### REQUIREMENT 44

**IDENTIFIER** /req/projection/projections-resource

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 12: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/projection>

**A** A GET operation at /projectionsAndDatums providing at minimum a JSON representation SHALL be supported.

### 18.3.2. Available projections response

The custom projections resource includes a methods property listing the available projections operation methods, corresponding to the valid values for the crs-proj-method query parameter, and their associated parameters, corresponding to the valid values for the crs-proj-params parameters.

The custom projections resource also includes a `datums` property listing the available datums corresponding to the valid values for the `crs-datum` query parameter.

## REQUIREMENT 45

**IDENTIFIER** /req/projection/projections-response

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 12: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/projection>

- A** The implementation SHALL include in its response for the `/projectionsAndDatums` resource the complete list of custom CRS projection operation methods supported for map retrieval operations.
- B** The implementation SHALL include in its response for the `/projectionsAndDatums` resource the complete list of custom CRS datums supported for map retrieval operations.
- C** In the JSON representation, the list of supported projection operation methods SHALL be provided as a dictionary (associative array) value for a `methods` property associating operation method objects (including optional title and description properties) to the corresponding identifiers to be used as values for the `crs-proj-method` query parameter.
- D** These operation method identifiers SHALL be safe CURIEs when a registered URI exists for the method.
- E** In the JSON representation, the list of supported datums SHALL be provided as a dictionary (associative array) value for a `datums` property associating datum objects to the corresponding identifiers to be used as values for the `crs-datum` query parameter.
- F** These datum identifiers SHALL be safe CURIEs when a registered URI exists for the datum.
- G** The datum object SHALL include an `ellipsoid` property specifying the safe CURIE for the associated ellipsoid and may contain additional optional title and description properties.
- H** In the JSON representation, the operation method objects SHALL include all valid parameters for that method as a dictionary (associative array) value for a `parameters` property to method parameters object (including optional title and description properties) to the corresponding identifiers to be used as values for the `crs-proj-params` query parameter.
- I** These method parameters SHALL be safe CURIEs when a registered URI exists for the parameter. To avoid repeating the same parameter, those objects may use a JSON pointer (`$ref`) to a top-level `parameters` property in the same custom projections JSON document.
- J** In the JSON representation, the operation method objects SHALL include `centerLatParam` and/or `centerLonParam` properties (as applicable) whose values SHALL be the identifiers corresponding to the parameters for which values specified for the `crs-proj-center` query parameter will be mapped, in a manner consistent with requirement /req/projection/crs-proj-center-definition.

**NOTE:** Refer to the OpenAPI definition for the `/projectionsAndDatums` path resource for the schema corresponding to these requirements.

**Example – Example JSON response for `/projectionsAndDatums` resource listing available projections, parameters and datums**

```

{
 "methods":
 {
 "[epsg-method:9802]":
 {
 "title": "Lambert Conic Conformal",
 "description": "Lambert Conic Conformal projection (2 standard
parallels)",
 "parameters":
 {
 "[epsg-parameter:8823)": { "$ref": "#/parameters/[epsg-
parameter:8823]" },
 "[epsg-parameter:8824)": { "$ref": "#/parameters/[epsg-
parameter:8824]" },
 },
 "centerLatParam": "[epsg-parameter:8823]"
 },
 "[epsg-method:9805]":
 {
 "title": "Mercator",
 "description": "Mercator projection",
 "parameters":
 {
 "[epsg-parameter:8823)": { "$ref": "#/parameters/[epsg-
parameter:8823]" },
 "[epsg-parameter:8802)": { "$ref": "#/parameters/[epsg-
parameter:8802]" }
 },
 "centerLatParam": "[epsg-parameter:8823]",
 "centerLonParam": "[epsg-parameter:8802]"
 },
 "[epsg-method:9807]":
 {
 "title": "Transverse Mercator",
 "description": "Transverse Mercator projection",
 "parameters":
 {
 "[epsg-parameter:8801)": { "$ref": "#/parameters/[epsg-
parameter:8801]" },
 "[epsg-parameter:8802)": { "$ref": "#/parameters/[epsg-
parameter:8802]" }
 },
 "centerLatParam": "[epsg-parameter:8801]",
 "centerLonParam": "[epsg-parameter:8802]"
 },
 "[epsg-method:9820]":
 {
 "title": "Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area",
 "description": "Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area projection",
 "parameters":
 {
 "epsg-parameter:8801": { "$ref": "#/parameters/[epsg-parameter:8801]" },
 "epsg-parameter:8802": { "$ref": "#/parameters/[epsg-parameter:8802]" }
 },
 "centerLatParam": "[epsg-parameter:8801]",
 "centerLonParam": "[epsg-parameter:8802]"
 },
 "[epsg-method:9829]":
 {
 "title": "Polar Stereographic",
 "description": "Polar Stereographic projection",
 }
 }
}

```

```

"parameters":
{
 "[epsg-parameter:8832)": { "$ref": "#/parameters/[epsg-
parameter:8832]" },
 "[epsg-parameter:8833)": { "$ref": "#/parameters/[epsg-
parameter:8833]" },
},
"centerLatParam": "[epsg-parameter:8832]",
"centerLonParam": "[epsg-parameter:8833]"
},
"[epsg-method:9840]":
{
 "title": "Orthographic",
 "description": "Orthographic projection",
 "parameters":
 {
 "epsg-parameter:8801": { "$ref": "#/parameters/[epsg-parameter:8801]" },
 "epsg-parameter:8802": { "$ref": "#/parameters/[epsg-parameter:8802]" }
 },
 "centerLatParam": "[epsg-parameter:8801]",
 "centerLonParam": "[epsg-parameter:8802]"
},
"mollweide":
{
 "title": "Mollweide",
 "description": "Mollweide projection",
 "parameters":
 {
 "epsg-parameter:8802": { "$ref": "#/parameters/[epsg-parameter:8802]" }
 },
 "centerLonParam": "[epsg-parameter:8802]"
},
},
"parameters":
{
 "[epsg-parameter:8801)": { "title": "Latitude of natural origin" },
 "[epsg-parameter:8802)": { "title": "Longitude of natural origin" },
 "[epsg-parameter:8823)": { "title": "Latitude of 1st standard parallel" },
 "[epsg-parameter:8824)": { "title": "Latitude of 2nd standard parallel" },
 "[epsg-parameter:8832)": { "title": "Latitude of standard parallel" },
 "[epsg-parameter:8833)": { "title": "Longitude of origin" }
},
"datums":
{
 "[epsg-datum:6230]":
 {
 "title": "European Datum 1950",
 "description": "European Datum 1950",
 "ellipsoid": "[epsg-ellipsoid:7022]"
 },
 "[epsg-datum:6326]":
 {
 "title": "WGS84",
 "description": "World Geodetic System 1984 ensemble",
 "ellipsoid": "[epsg-ellipsoid:7030]"
 }
}
}

```

19

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “COLLECTION MAP”

---

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “COLLECTION MAP”

## 19.1. Overview

### REQUIREMENTS CLASS 13: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘COLLECTION MAP’

|                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER           | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/collection-map">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/collection-map</a>                                                                                                                                                      |
| TARGET TYPE          | Web API                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| CONFORMANCE CLASS    | Conformance class A.13: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/collection-map">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/collection-map</a>                                                                                                                            |
| PREREQUISITES        | Requirements class 1: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core</a><br><a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-common-2/1.0/req/collections">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-common-2/1.0/req/collections</a> |
| NORMATIVE STATEMENTS | Requirement 46: /req/collection-map/desc-links<br>Requirement 47: /req/collection-map/desc-crs<br>Requirement 48: /req/collection-map/map-operation                                                                                                                                                    |

The Collection Map requirements class specifies how to get maps from particular resources that contain geospatial data. Common resources that can contain geospatial data are the ones at the endpoint /collections/{collectionId} defined by the OGC API – Common or OGC API – Features Standards.

## 19.2. General

### RECOMMENDATION 15

IDENTIFIER /rec/collection-map/api-common

A Developers implementing the OGC API – Maps Standard should consider using the requirements classes specified in the <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-common-1/1.0/req/core> (OGC API – Common version 1.0).

The Collection Maps requirements class depends on the OGC API – Common – Part 2 – Geospatial data “collections” requirements classes but remains flexible and does not require

using OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core. This allows for other API architectures outside the OGC API framework to implement OGC API – Maps requirements classes. However, OGC API servers are normally expected to implement OGC API – Common – Part 1. If so, in practice, this means that the landing page and the conformance page follow OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core. It is also possible to combine this building block with OGC API – Features – Part 1: Core version 1.0 that is not tied to OGC API – Common, which can also be substituted for the OGC API – Common – Part 2 dependency.

## 19.3. Geospatial data resources

---

The Maps API Standard does not specify how geospatial resources are exposed in the API or if they can be retrieved as raw geospatial data (e.g., feature items or coverage cell values). The Maps API Standard expects that other OGC API Standards will define how to expose additional access mechanisms for these geospatial resources. Examples of such standards, all of which also implement OGC API – Common – Part 2: Geospatial data defining the /collections and /collections/{collectionId} paths, are:

- [OGC API – Tiles](#) (Tiled vector data and tiled coverage data)
- [OGC API – Features](#) (feature collections and features)
- [OGC API – Coverages](#) ( coverages and data cubes)
- [OGC API – EDR](#) (retrieval of spatiotemporal data)
- [OGC API – Processes – Part 3: Workflows and Chaining](#) (“Collection Output” requirements class)

The geospatial resources managed by these OGC API Standards (tiled vector data and tiled coverage data, feature collections and features, coverages and data cubes, spatiotemporal data and collection outputs as a result of a process execution) can be modified or complemented by other resources creating new endpoints indirectly giving access to the modified or complemented resources. Other OGC API Standards will define these mechanisms. An example of doing that is:

- [OGC API – Styles](#) which defines how to complement a geospatial resource by adding a style to it. The new resource is an overlap of both resources.

NOTE 1: The concept of a geospatial resource path substitutes the concept of “layer” in WMS but it intends to give a better integration between data visualization and data access.

### REQUIREMENT 46

IDENTIFIER /req/collection-map/desc-links

## REQUIREMENT 46

|                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>INCLUDED IN</b> | Requirements class 13: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/collection-map">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/collection-map</a>                                                                                           |
| <b>A</b>           | The OGC API collection description SHALL include a link with relation type <a href="https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/map">https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/map</a> (or [ogc-rel:map]) and the href pointing to the map resource for this collection. |

## PERMISSION 7

**IDENTIFIER** /per/collection-map/desc-links

**A** The collection can be exposed as a map totally or partially.

## REQUIREMENT 47

**IDENTIFIER** /req/collection-map/desc-crs

|                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>INCLUDED IN</b> | Requirements class 13: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/collection-map">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/collection-map</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>A</b>           | The crs property in the collection object of a geospatial collection SHALL contain URI or safe CURIEs for the list of CRSs supported by the server for that collection.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>B</b>           | If the collection is available more efficiently (e.g., if it is stored in the server in that CRS) using a particular CRS (the native CRS, also <i>called storage CRS</i> ) that is not <a href="https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84">https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84</a> , a storageCrs property in the collection object of a geospatial collection SHALL be the URI or the safe CURIE for that CRS. |
| <b>C</b>           | If a storageCrs property is used and that is not <a href="https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84">https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84</a> , an overall bounding box (and optional inner bounding boxes for sparse data) SHALL be provided in a storageCrsBbox property within the spatial dimension of the extent following the same schema as the CRS84 bbox.                                               |

## RECOMMENDATION 16

**IDENTIFIER** /rec/collection-map/storage-epoch

**A** If the collection is available more efficiently using a particular CRS (exposed in the storageCrs parameter) that is a dynamic coordinate reference system, the property storageCrsCoordinateEpoch in the collection object of the geospatial collection SHOULD provide the epoch of that CRS.

**Example – Fragment of a collection with a links array with one item of the array pointing to a map.**

```
{
 "id": "buildings",
 "title": "Buildings in the city of Bonn",
 "description": "This collection contains buildings",
 "attribution": "OpenStreetMap",
 "extent": {
 "spatial": {
 "bbox": [[-2.2830363, 39.8188272, 6.6350523, 42.7010011]]
 "storageCrsBbox": [[47736, 4421022, 797736, 4734022]]
 }
 },
 "crs": "[[EPSG:32631]", "[EPSG:23031]", "[EPSG:4326]",
 "storageCrs": "[EPSG:32631]",
 "storageCrsCoordinateEpoch": 2022.3,
 "links": [
 ...
 {
 "href": "https://data.example.com/collections/buildings/map",
 "rel": "https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/map",
 "type": "image/png",
 }
]
}
```

**NOTE 2:** In the WMS Standard, layers have a hierarchical dependency. At the time this version of the Maps API Standard was approved, neither OGC API – Features nor OGC API – Common defined such a concept. However, there was a draft proposal to establish a hierarchical relation between collections based on a parent property and/or an `up` link relation type in the collection description. If a collection represented a hierarchy, then the Collections Selection requirements class could allow the selection of a subset of the collections it consists of to be included using the `collections` parameter.

## 19.4. Geospatial Data Resource Map

---

The core requirements class defines a map resource that is associated with an operation that contains the necessary information to later formulate a map request. Nevertheless, the Maps API core does not specify how to retrieve a map resource representing another resource. This section provides one possible workflow to support that use case from a geospatial data resource offered by an implementation of the Maps API.

### 19.4.1. Map path

## REQUIREMENT 48

**IDENTIFIER** /req/collection-map/map-operation

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 13: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/collection-map>

**A** Every OGC API collection available as a map SHALL support an HTTP GET operation to a URL /collections/{collectionId}/map to retrieve a map from that collection resource.

This requirements class does not specify any additional query parameter for the GET request.

### 19.4.2. Response

A successful GET response is described in the Maps API core class (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core>).

A successful response is a map that represents the collection of the geospatial data resource.

20

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “DATASET MAP”

---

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “DATASET MAP”

---

## 20.1. Overview

---

### REQUIREMENTS CLASS 14: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘DATASET MAP’

|                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER           | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/dataset-map">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/dataset-map</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| TARGET TYPE          | Web API                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| CONFORMANCE CLASS    | Conformance class A.14: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/dataset-map">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/dataset-map</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| PREREQUISITES        | Requirements class 1: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core</a><br><a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-common-1/1.0/req/core">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-common-1/1.0/req/core</a><br><a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-common-1/1.0/req/landing-page">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-common-1/1.0/req/landing-page</a> |
| NORMATIVE STATEMENTS | Requirement 49: /req/dataset-map/landingpage<br>Requirement 50: /req/dataset-map/desc-extent<br>Requirement 51: /req/dataset-map/desc-crs<br>Requirement 52: /req/dataset-map/operation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

The Maps API core requirements class defines how to retrieve a map from a resource but does not detail which resources can be “mapped”. The Dataset Map requirements class defines how to retrieve a map resource from the dataset represented by the service. In other words, it provides the path to retrieve a map resource from the dataset behind the API endpoint. This is achieved by adding the map path to the root (a.k.a. the landing page) of the service.

## 20.2. General

---

The Dataset Map describes how to serve maps for a dataset provided through a Web API instance implementing OGC API – Common – Part 1 requirements classes or [OGC API – Features – Part 1: Core, version 1.0](#) as an alternative.

## 20.3. Dataset API landing page

---

The landing page provides links to start exploring the resources offered by the API endpoint. The landing page mainly consists of a list of links to root resources. The Maps API Standard extension specifies a new link in the landing page for getting a dataset map.

### 20.3.1. Response

The root path of an OGC API offering access to geospatial data represents a dataset that will be exposed in different ways by the API.

Sub-resources can be added to the root path of an OGC API endpoint to complement it by offering new endpoints indirectly giving access to the complemented dataset. Other OGC API Standards will define this mechanism. An example is OGC API – Styles which defines how to complement a geospatial resource by adding a style to it. The new resource is an overlap of the dataset and the resource.

#### REQUIREMENT 49

**IDENTIFIER** /req/dataset-map/landingpage

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 14: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/dataset-map>

**A** The deployed API endpoint landing page SHALL include a link with relation type <https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/map> (or [ogc-rel:map]) to the dataset map URL at /map.

In the landing page, in JSON format, the links follow the link schema defined in the OGC API – Common or in the OGC API – Features Standards. Below you can find an example fragment of the response to an OGC API – Maps landing page showing the link to the dataset map.

#### REQUIREMENT 50

**IDENTIFIER** /req/dataset-map/desc-extent

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 14: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/dataset-map>

**A** An extent CRS SHALL be provided in an “extent” property of the API landing page following the same schema as the “extent” property for the collection (see OGC API – Common – Part 2: Geospatial Data).

**NOTE:** The spatial bounding box is provided in <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> for Earthly data.

## REQUIREMENT 51

**IDENTIFIER** /req/dataset-map/desc-crs

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 14: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/dataset-map>

- A** The crs property in the landing page of a dataset SHALL contain URIs or safe CURIEs for the list of CRSs supported by the dataset as a whole.
- B** If the dataset is available more efficiently using a particular CRS that is not <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84>, a storageCrs property in the landing page of a dataset SHALL have the URI or the safe CURIE for that CRS as a value. For example, it may be more efficient to retrieve a map in the same CRS used to store the data. Note that the native CRS is also called the *storage CRS*.
- C** If a storageCrs property is used and that is not <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84>, an overall bounding box (and optional inner bounding boxes for sparse data) SHALL be provided in a storageCrsBbox property within the spatial dimension of the extent following the same schema as the CRS84 bbox.

## RECOMMENDATION 17

**IDENTIFIER** /rec/dataset/storage-epoch

**A** If the dataset is available more efficiently using a particular CRS (exposed in the storageCrs parameter) that is a dynamic coordinate reference system, the property storageCrsCoordinateEpoch in the landing page of the dataset SHOULD provide the epoch of that CRS.

**Example – API Landing Page fragment that advertises the dataset map, the storageCrs and the extent of it.**

```
{
 "title": "Dataset of the city of Bonn",
 "description": "Dataset containing collections such as buildings",
 "attribution": "OpenStreetMap",
 "extent": {
 "spatial": {
 "bbox": [[-2.2830363, 39.8188272, 6.6350523, 42.7010011]],
 "storageCrsBbox": [[47736, 4421022, 797736, 4734022]]
 }
 },
 "crs": ["EPSG:32631", "EPSG:23031", "EPSG:4326"],
 "storageCrs": "EPSG:32631",
 "storageCrsCoordinateEpoch": 2022.3,
 "links": [
 ...
 {
 "href": "https://data.example.org/map",
 "rel": "https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/map",
 "type": "image/png",
 "title": "Map combining collections in the dataset"
 }
]
```

```
]
}
```

## 20.4. Dataset maps

---

### 20.4.1. Map path

#### REQUIREMENT 52

**IDENTIFIER** /req/dataset-map/operation

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 14: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/dataset-map>

**A** The Maps API implementation SHALL support an HTTP GET operation for the /map URL to retrieve a map from the dataset API endpoint in the default style.

The operation request does not define extra parameters. Servers can advertise the requirements class <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-tiles-1/1.0/req/collections-selection> to add a collections parameter that can be used to include only parts of the dataset in the map representation.

### 20.4.2. Response

A successful GET response is described in the core class (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core>).

A successful response is a map resource that represents the entire dataset. In a Web API providing access to a complex dataset comprised of several geospatial data resources, there are reasons for being selective in the amount of information included. This can be achieved by applying a manual filter described in the Requirements Class “Collection Selection” or as an automatic decision by the server side.

#### RECOMMENDATION 18

**IDENTIFIER** /rec/dataset-map/geodata-selection

**A** When it is possible and sensible, all geospatial data resources (/collections) supporting the requested CRS SHOULD be represented in the map response.

## PERMISSION 8

**IDENTIFIER** /per/dataset-map/geodata-selection

- A** If it is not possible and sensible to represent all geospatial data resources (/collections) in a map (e.g. it compromises performance or maps are become packed with too many elements), the server is allowed to select only the most significant geospatial data resources.

21

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “STYLED MAPS”

---

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “STYLED MAPS”

## 21.1. Overview

### REQUIREMENTS CLASS 15: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘STYLED MAPS’

|                      |                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER           | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/styled-map">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/styled-map</a>                           |
| TARGET TYPE          | Web API                                                                                                                                                             |
| CONFORMANCE CLASS    | Conformance class A.15: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/styled-map">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/styled-map</a> |
| PREREQUISITE         | Requirements class 1: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core</a>                 |
| NORMATIVE STATEMENTS | Requirement 53: /req/styled-map/desc-links<br>Requirement 54: /req/styled-map/map-operation                                                                         |

The Styles Map requirements class specifies how to get maps from particular resources with a style applied by OGC API – Styles 1.0.

**NOTE:** This mechanism replaces the parameter `STYLES` in WMS 1.3 and adds the possibility to have a generic style for all layers of the service at once.

## 21.2. Styled resources

Geospatial resources can be modified or complemented by styles creating new endpoints giving access to the modified or complemented resources. The way this is done to a dataset resource or to a collection is specified in the OGC API – Styles candidate Standard (as of December 2023).

### REQUIREMENT 53

IDENTIFIER /req/styled-map/desc-links

INCLUDED Requirements class 15: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/styled-map>

## REQUIREMENT 53

A If the deployed API endpoint has a mechanism to expose links associated with styled geospatial resources (e.g., the OGC API – Styles list of styles at /styles for a dataset or at /collections/{collectionId}/styles for a collection), those styled resources SHALL include a link with link relation <https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/map> (or [ogc-rel:map]) and the href pointing to the map associated with that styled resource.

**Example – Fragment of a collection with a links array with one item of the array pointing to a map.**

```
{
 "id": "buildings",
 "title": "Buildings in the city of Bonn",
 "description": "This collection contains buildings",
 "attribution": "OpenStreetMap",
 "extent": {
 ...
 }
 "links": [
 ...
 {
 "href": "https://data.example.com/collections/buildings/styles/dark/map",
 "rel": "https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/map",
 "type": "image/png",
 }
]
}
```

## 21.3. Styled Resource Map

Styled resources are defined by the draft OGC API – Styles candidate Standard (as of December 2023). Nevertheless, that draft does not specify how to retrieve a map resource representing a styled resource. This section explains how to do this.

### 21.3.1. Map path

## REQUIREMENT 54

**IDENTIFIER** /req/styled-map/map-operation

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 15: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/styled-map>

A Every resource for which a styled map is available SHALL support an HTTP GET operation to a .../styles/{styleId}/map URL to retrieve a map for a particular style (e.g., /collections/

## REQUIREMENT 54

{collectionId}/styles/{styleId} for a styled collection map or /styles/{styleId}/map for a styled dataset map).

The Maps API Standard does not specify any additional query parameter in the GET request.

### 21.3.2. Response

A successful GET response is described in the Maps API core class (<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core>).

A successful response is a map that represents the styled resource.

22

# REQUIREMENTS CLASSES FOR ENCODINGS

---

The OGC API – *Maps* Standard is designed to support mapped data that can potentially be encoded and provided in existing geospatial formats or new formats that could be developed in the future. Web API deployments may adopt these encodings and declare conformance to them in the list of conformance classes supported by the API. The requirements in this section do not limit the number of encodings offered by a Maps API deployment. The intent is to provide a minimum set of encodings that could be implemented by any deployed Maps APIs as well as to provide a practical way to test conformance to this Standard. For each of these encodings, a requirements class is defined. An API implementing OGC API – *Maps* classes is free to support other encodings and data formats. These other formats may be more convenient for given use cases even though they may not be listed as supported conformance classes by the API. In addition, the declaration of an encoding in the supported conformance classes does not mean that all the resources provided by an implementation of an OGC API Standard should support all of them. Partial support could be conditioned by the nature of the data behind each collection.

## 22.1. Overview

Six requirements classes for map responses of OGC API – *Maps* implementations supporting various encodings are defined:

- PNG
- JPEG
- JPEG XL
- TIFF
- SVG
- HTML

NOTE 1: If maps are provided as tiles, this section should be ignored and the equivalent section in the OGC API – *Tiles* – Part 1: Core Standard should be used instead.

NOTE 2: None of the encodings specified here are mandatory and an implementation of the Maps API Standard may implement none of them but implement other encodings instead.

## 22.2. Requirements Class “PNG”

PNG can be used for simple and immediate visualization in a web browser. For this use case, selecting an encoding that can be natively interpreted by the web browser is fundamental. The PNG format is one of the most popular formats. The PNG format is defined by the ISO

Information technology Computer graphics and image processing ISO/IEC 15948:2004  
Information technology – Computer graphics and image processing – Portable Network Graphics (PNG): Functional specification, also available from the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C) at <https://www.w3.org/TR/PNG>.

PNG supports lossless data compression. PNG supports palette-based images (with palettes of 24-bit RGB or 32-bit RGBA colors), grayscale images (with or without an alpha channel for transparency), and full-color non-palette-based RGB or RGBA images. The PNG working group designed the format for transferring images on the Internet, not for professional-quality print graphics. Therefore, non-RGB color spaces such as CMYK are not supported.

## REQUIREMENTS CLASS 16: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘PNG’

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER          | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/png">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/png</a>                                                                          |
| TARGET TYPE         | Web API                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| CONFORMANCE CLASS   | Conformance class A.16: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/png">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/png</a>                                                |
| PREREQUISITES       | Requirements class 1: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core</a><br>ISO/IEC 15948 Portable Network Graphics (PNG) |
| NORMATIVE STATEMENT | Requirement 55: /req/png/content                                                                                                                                                                     |

## REQUIREMENT 55

|             |                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER  | /req/png/content                                                                                                                                   |
| INCLUDED IN | Requirements class 16: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/png">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/png</a> |
| A           | Every 200-response of the server with the media type <code>image/png</code> SHALL be a PNG document representing only one map.                     |
| B           | The colors of the PNG SHALL represent the geospatial features or coverage values in the map.                                                       |
| C           | The alpha channel of the PNG SHALL be used when partial transparency is required                                                                   |
| D           | All maps representing parts of the same resource or resources and using the same style SHALL follow the same portrayal rules                       |

**NOTE:** The way the colors in the PNG format are mapped to geospatial features or coverage values is out of scope for the Maps API Standard. However, a common set of portrayal rules for

all maps representing part of the same resource is essential, as maps are normally represented one after the other as a response to actions of the user (e.g. zoom and pan).

## 22.3. Requirements Class “JPEG”

JPEG can be used for simple and immediate visualization in a web browser. In these circumstances, selecting an encoding that can be natively interpreted by the web browser is fundamental. The JPEG format is another popular format used in web applications. JPEG is defined by the ITU-T Recommendation T.81 and the ISO/IEC 10918-1 Standard.

The JPEG compression algorithm operates at its best on photographs and paintings with smooth variations of tone and color. It is best used for color and grayscale still images, but not for binary images. JPEG is also the most common format used by digital cameras. However, JPEG is not well suited for line drawings and other textual or iconic graphics, where the sharp contrasts between adjacent pixels can cause noticeable artifacts. Such images are better saved in a lossless graphics format such as PNG because JPEG uses a lossy compression method, which reduces image fidelity. As such, it is inappropriate for exact reproduction of imaging data.

### REQUIREMENTS CLASS 17: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘JPEG’

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER          | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/jpeg">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/jpeg</a>                                          |
| TARGET TYPE         | Web API                                                                                                                                                                |
| CONFORMANCE CLASS   | Conformance class A.17: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/jpeg">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/jpeg</a>                |
| PREREQUISITES       | Requirements class 1: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core</a><br>ISO/IEC 10918-1 |
| NORMATIVE STATEMENT | Requirement 56: /req/jpeg/content                                                                                                                                      |

### REQUIREMENT 56

|             |                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER  | /req/jpeg/content                                                                                                                                    |
| INCLUDED IN | Requirements class 17: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/jpeg">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/jpeg</a> |
| A           | Every 200-response of the server with the media type <code>image/jpeg</code> SHALL be a JPEG document representing only one map.                     |
| B           | The colors of the JPEG SHALL represent geospatial features and/or coverage values in the map.                                                        |

## REQUIREMENT 56

C

All maps representing parts of the same resource or resources and using the same style SHALL follow the same portrayal rules.

**NOTE 1:** The way the colors in the JPEG are mapped to geospatial features or coverage values is out of scope of the Maps API Standard. However, a common set of portrayal rules for all maps representing part of the same resource is essential, as maps are normally represented one after the other as a response to actions of the user (e.g., zoom and pan).

**NOTE 2:** JPEG is an ideal format for some remote sensing imagery. The use of JPEG to represent linear features or color solid polygons is not recommended.

## 22.4. Requirements Class “JPEG XL”

JPEG XL is a relatively newer image format (compared to PNG and JPEG) with support for both lossy and lossless compression, alpha channels, high bit depths, high image quality, high compression ratio as well as high performance encoding and decoding. Free and open source libraries are available to read and write the format such as libjxl, released under a 3-clause BSD license. Although JPEG XL is not yet widely supported in web browsers at the time of writing this document, this situation is likely to change, and this requirements class is included due to the numerous advantages of JPEG XL over the traditional JPEG and PNG encoding, such as avoiding the need for compromising between high compression ratio, image quality and translucency. JPEG XL is defined by the multi-part ISO standard Information technology JPEG XL – image coding system, including ISO/IEC 18181-1:2024 Part 1: Core coding system and ISO/IEC 18181-2:2024 Part 2: File format.

### REQUIREMENTS CLASS 18: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘JPEG XL’

|            |                                                                                                                                   |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/jpegxl">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/jpegxl</a> |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|             |         |
|-------------|---------|
| TARGET TYPE | Web API |
|-------------|---------|

|                   |                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CONFORMANCE CLASS | Conformance class A.18: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/jpegxl">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/jpegxl</a> |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PREREQUISITES | Requirements class 1: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core</a><br>ISO/IEC 18181-1 JPEG XL image coding system – Part 1: Core coding system<br>ISO/IEC 18181-2 JPEG XL image coding system – Part 2: File format |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                     |                                     |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| NORMATIVE STATEMENT | Requirement 57: /req/jpegxl/content |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|

## REQUIREMENT 57

IDENTIFIER /req/jpegxl/content

INCLUDED IN Requirements class 18: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/jpegxl>

A Every 200-response of the server with the media type `image/jxl` SHALL be a JPEG XL file representing only one map.

B The JPEG XL SHALL be a color image representing the geospatial features or coverage values in the map.

C All maps representing parts of the same resource or resources and using the same style SHALL follow the same portrayal rules.

**NOTE 1:** The way the colors in the JPEG XL are mapped to geospatial features or coverage values is out of scope of the Maps API Standard. However, a common set of portrayal rules for all maps representing part of the same resource is essential, as maps are normally represented one after the other as a response to actions of the user (e.g., zoom and pan).

**NOTE 2:** JPEG XL is an ideal file format for all map types, due to its support for high image quality (including the possibility of lossless encoding), high compression ratio, high bit depth and translucency.

## 22.5. Requirements Class “TIFF”

One use case for maps is to distribute coverage values as regular grids. In these circumstances, selecting an encoding able to store grid values in their original format and eventually compress them using lossless compression is the right solution. The TIFF format is one of the older formats but is still one of the most popular formats to preserve arrays of data values and is defined by the Adobe Systems TIFF v6 specification.

TIFF is a flexible, adaptable file format for handling images and data. The ability to store data in a lossless format makes a TIFF file a useful image archive: Unlike standard JPEG files, a TIFF file using lossless compression such as PackBits or LZW compression.

## REQUIREMENTS CLASS 19: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘TIFF’

IDENTIFIER <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/tiff>

TARGET TYPE Web API

CONFORMANCE CLASS Conformance class A.19: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/tiff>

## REQUIREMENTS CLASS 19: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘TIFF’

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PREREQUISITES       | Requirements class 1: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/</a><br>req/core<br>TIFF Revision 6.0 |
| NORMATIVE STATEMENT | Requirement 58: /req/tiff/content                                                                                                                                    |

### REQUIREMENT 58

IDENTIFIER /req/tiff/content

INCLUDED IN Requirements class 19: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/tiff>

A Every 200-response of the server with the media type `image/tiff` SHALL be a TIFF document representing only one map.

B The TIFF file SHALL represent colors by using an image palette or RGB combination.

C All maps representing parts of the same resource or resources and using the same style SHALL follow the same portrayal rules or represent data with the same reference and units of measure.

**NOTE:** TIFF is an ideal support for geospatial grid data values in its original format. This is not allowed for OGC API – Maps and it is expected that OGC API endpoints dealing with coverages will support this mode.

### RECOMMENDATION 19

IDENTIFIER /rec/tiff/geotiff

A A TIFF encoding SHOULD include georeference information using the [OGC GeoTIFF Standard](#).

## 22.6. Requirements Class “SVG”

SVG is a commonly used format for representing vector objects on the web. SVG is simple to understand and well supported by tools and software libraries. Modern web browsers can render the SVG format directly and can also react to events generated by the user on the features visualized. That is why it is a good alternative for creating more interactive maps.

## REQUIREMENTS CLASS 20: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘SVG’

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER          | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/svg">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/svg</a>                                                             |
| TARGET TYPE         | Web API                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| CONFORMANCE CLASS   | Conformance class A.20: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/svg">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/svg</a>                                   |
| PREREQUISITES       | Requirements class 1: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core</a><br>Scalable Vector Graphics (SVG) 2 |
| NORMATIVE STATEMENT | Requirement 59: /req/svg/content                                                                                                                                                        |

## REQUIREMENT 59

|             |                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER  | /req/svg/content                                                                                                                                   |
| INCLUDED IN | Requirements class 20: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/svg">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/svg</a> |
| A           | Every 200-response of the server with the media type <code>image/svg+xml</code> SHALL be an SVG document representing only a map.                  |
| B           | The SVG coordinates inside the map SHALL start at 0,0 and end in the width and height of the request.                                              |

## PERMISSION 9

|            |                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER | /per/svg/overflow                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| A          | SVG content of a map can contain features that are partially outside of the requested map bounding box (represented by negative coordinates or coordinates bigger than the requested width and height). |

## 22.7. Requirements Class “HTML”

Returning an HTML page with a full, operational map browser that allows for interactive navigation over the map (e.g., zoom and pan) is convenient for easy exploration of the data or for testing purposes.

## REQUIREMENTS CLASS 21: REQUIREMENTS CLASS 'HTML'

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER          | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/html">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/html</a>                                               |
| TARGET TYPE         | Web API                                                                                                                                                                     |
| CONFORMANCE CLASS   | Conformance class A.21: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/html">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/html</a>                     |
| PREREQUISITES       | Requirements class 1: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core</a><br>HTML Living Standard |
| NORMATIVE STATEMENT | Requirement 60: /req/html/content                                                                                                                                           |

## REQUIREMENT 60

|             |                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER  | /req/html/content                                                                                                                                    |
| INCLUDED IN | Requirements class 21: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/html">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/html</a> |
| A           | Every 200-response of the server with the media type text/html SHALL be an HTML document representing the geospatial data as maps.                   |

**NOTE 1:** An HTML page can contain links to other resources. In particular, it can contain image sources linked to map resources as image/png or image/jpeg that will represent the actual data.

**NOTE 2:** An HTML page may contain MapML elements to represent the map (<https://maps4html.org/MapML/spec/>).

## RECOMMENDATION 20

|            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER | /rec/html/content                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| A          | An HTML encoding MAY internally use requests to maps in image/png or image/jpeg format using this OGC API, to present the map images (e.g. in img src tags) to start and as a response to the actions of the user (e.g. zoom and pan). |

23

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “API OPERATIONS”

---

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “API OPERATIONS”

---

## 23.1. Overview

---

### REQUIREMENTS CLASS 22: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘API OPERATIONS’

|                      |                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER           | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/api-operations">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/api-operations</a>                           |
| TARGET TYPE          | Web API                                                                                                                                                                     |
| CONFORMANCE CLASS    | Conformance class A.22: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/api-operations">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/api-operations</a> |
| PREREQUISITE         | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-common-1/1.0/req/landing-page">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-common-1/1.0/req/landing-page</a>                           |
| NORMATIVE STATEMENTS | Requirement 61: /req/api-operations/completeness<br>Requirement 62: /req/api-operations/operation-id                                                                        |

The “API Operations” requirements class defines requirements for providing a definition of a Web API implementing the Maps API Standard using an API definition language. This requirements class is intended to be combined with another requirements class specifying requirements for providing an API definition in a particular API definition language and / or version, such as the OpenAPI 3.0 requirements class defined in [OGC API – Common – Part 1 :Core](#), or another eventual requirements class for OpenAPI 3.1.

## 23.2. Web API description

---

The API definition provides a description of the complete list of API resources available at an endpoint. Reading this description, an application would have the full picture of the resources that the API implementation provides, how to retrieve resources, and what responses are expected for successful and unsuccessful requests. Without an API description or documentation, an application would be forced to traverse all links, starting with the landing page, to get an equivalent full list of resources.

The *OpenAPI Specification 3.0 (oas30)* requirements class from [OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core](#) provides many details on general requirements that can be used in conjunction with this requirements class. A later version of OGC API – Common may describe how to declare support

for other versions of OpenAPI. This requirements class depends on the OGC API – Common landing page requirements class which provides details on how to request an API definition.

## 23.2.1. Response

### 23.2.1.1. Completeness

The API definition resulting as a response to this request needs to take into consideration the relevant resources specified in the Maps API Standard.

#### REQUIREMENT 61

**IDENTIFIER** /req/api-operations/completeness

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 22: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/api-operations>

- A** The API definition SHALL provide paths for all map, custom projections, tileset, tilesets list and tile resources provided by the API instance.
- B** The resource paths defined in the API definition SHALL be consistent with the links to the same resources provided by the landing page, collections, tileset and tilesets list resources.
- C** The resource paths defined in the API definition SHALL provide the description of the parameters that the map, tileset and tile resources need to operate that are specified in corresponding conformance classes.

### 23.2.1.2. Reusable API components

Reusable components for creating API definitions for implementations of this OGC API – Maps Standard using OpenAPI 3.0 can be found at <https://schemas.opengis.net/ogcapi/maps/part1/1.0/openapi>.

A server implementation of the OGC API – *Maps Standard* can use the content in the `openapi` directory to generate a response for the API description using OpenAPI 3.0. The `ogcapi-maps-1.yaml` file includes paths and components. An implementation should only include the paths that are implemented and remove the references to the paths that are not implemented. The components part includes parameters, responses and schemas that can be reused as-is. The `api` directory contains JSON files that are templates with enumerated values for collections, styles and tile matrix sets. A particular implementation of the Maps API should enumerate the actual resources exposed by the API deployment in the same way. The server can select to dynamically implement responses to `/api/*` (where `*` is replaced by `all-collections, styles,...`) or hardcode the `/api/*` files with the actual list of resource identifiers in the enumerations.

To improve performance, the whole content of this directory can be bundled into a single document by executing a tool such as *swagger-cli*. This document can be served for the OGC API – Common – Part 1 service-desc link from the landing page.

### 23.2.1.3. Path Operation Identifiers

The API definition provides a client application with a set of paths that the client can use to interact with the API endpoint and get new resources. The API description of each path provides a description of what parameters to use in the request and what to expect in the response. However, the Maps API Standard does not propose a fixed set of paths so there is an issue identifying the requirements classes pertaining to each path in an API instance. In other words, the API description alone does not provide enough information by itself. Therefore, there is a need to associate the resource paths in the API definition with the resources defined in the various requirements classes. The Maps API Standard proposes a suffix mechanism to be applied to the operation identifiers of the path (e.g., the `operationId` property in OpenAPI Specification 3.0) to list the requirements classes pertaining to each path. Each path should have a unique `operationId` suffix, so it is expected that the API instance provides a prefix to the proposed suffixes that make each operation identifier unique.

#### REQUIREMENT 62

**IDENTIFIER** /req/api-operations/operation-id

**INCLUDED IN** Requirements class 22: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/api-operations>

**A** For API definitions with a concept of operation identifiers, the paths defined in the API definition SHALL have an operation identifier value ending with the relevant dot-separated suffix corresponding to the resource as specified in Table 11.

**Table 11 – API operation identifier suffixes**

| ORIGIN                                             | STYLED RESOURCE           | OPERATION ID SUFFIXES        |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| root                                               | Projections               | getCustomCRSProjections      |
| <i>With the origins described in this document</i> |                           |                              |
| DataSet <sup>5</sup>                               | Map <sup>1</sup>          | .dataset.getMap              |
| DataSet <sup>5</sup>                               | TileSetsList <sup>4</sup> | .dataset.map.getTileSetsList |
| DataSet <sup>5</sup>                               | TileSet <sup>3</sup>      | .dataset.map.getTileSet      |
| DataSet <sup>5</sup>                               | Tile <sup>2</sup>         | .dataset.map.getTile         |

| ORIGIN                                          | STYLED              | RESOURCE                  | OPERATION ID SUFFIXES                 |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| DataSet <sup>5</sup>                            | Styled <sup>7</sup> | Map <sup>1</sup>          | .dataset.style.getMap                 |
| DataSet <sup>5</sup>                            | Styled <sup>7</sup> | TileSetsList <sup>4</sup> | .dataset.style.map.getTileSetsList    |
| DataSet <sup>5</sup>                            | Styled <sup>7</sup> | TileSet <sup>3</sup>      | .dataset.style.map.getTileSet         |
| DataSet <sup>5</sup>                            | Styled <sup>7</sup> | Tile <sup>2</sup>         | .dataset.style.map.getTile            |
| Collection <sup>6</sup>                         |                     | Map <sup>1</sup>          | .collection.getMap                    |
| Collection <sup>6</sup>                         |                     | TileSetsList <sup>4</sup> | .collection.map.getTileSetsList       |
| Collection <sup>6</sup>                         |                     | TileSet <sup>3</sup>      | .collection.map.getTileSet            |
| Collection <sup>6</sup>                         |                     | Tile <sup>2</sup>         | .collection.map.getTile               |
| Collection <sup>6</sup>                         | Styled <sup>7</sup> | Map <sup>1</sup>          | .collection.style.getMap              |
| Collection <sup>6</sup>                         | Styled <sup>7</sup> | TileSetsList <sup>4</sup> | .collection.style.map.getTileSetsList |
| Collection <sup>6</sup>                         | Styled <sup>7</sup> | TileSet <sup>3</sup>      | .collection.style.map.getTileSet      |
| Collection <sup>6</sup>                         | Styled <sup>7</sup> | Tile <sup>2</sup>         | .collection.style.map.getTile         |
| <i>With other potential origins<sup>8</sup></i> |                     |                           |                                       |
| other                                           |                     | Map <sup>1</sup>          | #.getMap                              |
| other                                           |                     | TileSetsList <sup>4</sup> | #.map.getTileSetsList                 |
| other                                           |                     | TileSet <sup>3</sup>      | #.map.getTileSet                      |
| other                                           |                     | Tile <sup>2</sup>         | #.map.getTile                         |
| other                                           | Styled <sup>7</sup> | Map <sup>1</sup>          | #.style.getMap                        |
| other                                           | Styled <sup>7</sup> | TileSetsList <sup>4</sup> | #.style.map.getTileSetsList           |
| other                                           | Styled <sup>7</sup> | TileSet <sup>3</sup>      | #.style.map.getTileSet                |
| other                                           | Styled <sup>7</sup> | Tile <sup>2</sup>         | #.style.map.getTile                   |

| ORIGIN                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | STYLED RESOURCE | OPERATION ID SUFFIXES |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| <sup>1</sup> The <i>Map</i> resource is defined in requirements class “Core”.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                 |                       |
| <sup>2</sup> The <i>Tile</i> resource is defined in the OGC API – <i>Tiles</i> – Part 1: Core “Core” requirements class.                                                                                                                                                        |                 |                       |
| <sup>3</sup> The <i>TileSet</i> resource is defined in the OGC API – <i>Tiles</i> – Part 1: Core “ <i>TileSet</i> ” requirements class.                                                                                                                                         |                 |                       |
| <sup>4</sup> The <i>TileSetsList</i> resource is defined in the OGC API – <i>Tiles</i> – Part 1: Core “ <i>TileSets List</i> ” requirements class. Map tilesets are defined in the <i>Map Tilesets</i> requirements class_ and depend on OGC API – <i>Tiles</i> – Part 1: Core. |                 |                       |
| <sup>5</sup> The <i>DataSet</i> origin is defined in requirements class “Dataset Maps” and depends on OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core.                                                                                                                                          |                 |                       |
| <sup>6</sup> The <i>Collection</i> origin is defined in requirements class “Collection Maps” and depends on the <i>Collections</i> requirements class defined in OGC API – Common – Part 2: Geospatial data.                                                                    |                 |                       |
| <sup>7</sup> Styled tilesets rely on the ability to list styles defined in OGC API – Styles.                                                                                                                                                                                    |                 |                       |
| <sup>8</sup> '#' represents an optional <i>origin</i> that could be defined in another relevant standard.                                                                                                                                                                       |                 |                       |

24

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “CORS”

# REQUIREMENTS CLASS “CORS”

## 24.1. Overview

### REQUIREMENTS CLASS 23: REQUIREMENTS CLASS ‘CORS’

|                     |                                                                                                                                                         |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER          | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/cors">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/cors</a>                           |
| TARGET TYPE         | Web API                                                                                                                                                 |
| CONFORMANCE CLASS   | Conformance class A.23: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/cors">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/cors</a> |
| PREREQUISITE        | <a href="https://www.w3.org/TR/2020/SPSD-cors-20200602/">https://www.w3.org/TR/2020/SPSD-cors-20200602/</a>                                             |
| NORMATIVE STATEMENT | Requirement 63: /req/cors/cors                                                                                                                          |

Many current implementations of map clients are done in HTML and JavaScript on HTTPS. A common situation is that a single JavaScript client combines maps from different Web APIs and domains. In this case, Cross-Origin Resource Sharing (CORS) is applied by web browsers preventing access of data from a domain that is different from the Web API, if this is not explicitly allowed by the server headers. The CORS requirements class requires the implementation of CORS support for the Web APIs.

## 24.2. CORS for JavaScript clients

### REQUIREMENT 63

|             |                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER  | /req/cors/cors                                                                                                                                                           |
| INCLUDED IN | Requirements class 23: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/cors">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/cors</a>                     |
| A           | The implementation SHALL support CORS as defined by W3C ( <a href="https://www.w3.org/TR/2020/SPSD-cors-20200602/">https://www.w3.org/TR/2020/SPSD-cors-20200602/</a> ). |

**NOTE 1:** By supporting CORS, an implementation allows JavaScript clients (e.g. Web Browser applications) to read the map from a domain different than the OGC API – Maps endpoint.

**NOTE 2:** It is not the purpose of this Standard to specify how CORS is implemented and that may change as web browsers and servers become more concerned about security (for example, currently a PNG in a <img src=""> is not affected by CORS but a PNG retrieved by the JavaScript fetch() function is affected). It is worth noting that a server that wants to authorize a JavaScript client application from another domain (under the CORS rules) should use the Access-Control-Allow-Origin: header to list which domains are authorized to read the map (or use \* to indicate that all domains are authorized). Services that want to comply to the open data sharing principles should be willing to allow all clients reading the data even if they are in other domains. However, this is up to the server implementers.



A

# ANNEX A (NORMATIVE) CONFORMANCE CLASS ABSTRACT TEST SUITE

---

# ANNEX A (NORMATIVE)

## CONFORMANCE CLASS ABSTRACT TEST SUITE

### A.1. Conformance Class “Core”

#### CONFORMANCE CLASS A.1

|                    |                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER         | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core</a>                     |
| REQUIREMENTS CLASS | Requirements class 1: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core</a> |
| TARGET TYPE        | Web API                                                                                                                                             |
| CONFORMANCE TESTS  | Abstract test A.1: /conf/core/map-op<br>Abstract test A.2: /conf/core/map-response<br>Abstract test A.3: /conf/core/conformance-success             |

#### A.1.1. Abstract Test for Requirement Map Operation

##### ABSTRACT TEST A.1

IDENTIFIER /conf/core/map-op

REQUIREMENT Requirement 1: /req/core/map-op

TEST PURPOSE Verify that the implementation supports the map retrieval operation

TEST METHOD **Given:** a geospatial data resource conforming to the Maps API Standard, with an API path including .../map... or discovered following a link with relation type [ogc-rel:map]

**When:** performing a GET operation on the /map resource with a supported media type specified in the Accept: header (e.g., Accept: image/png, image/jpeg)

## ABSTRACT TEST A.1

Then:

- assert that the implementation supports retrieving map resources at one or more .../map URL.

### A.1.2. Abstract Test for Requirement Map Response

## ABSTRACT TEST A.2

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/core/map-response

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 2: /req/core/map-response

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation's response for the map retrieval operation is correct

**Given:** a map resource that was successfully retrieved for Abstract test A.1: /conf/core/map-op

**When:** retrieving that resource for the map operation

Then:

- assert that the response has an HTTP status code 200,
- assert that the map response is in the storage CRS specified in the description of the geospatial resource (such as the associated collection or dataset), or <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> if none is specified,
- assert that the headers of the response include the Content-Crs: header with the URI or the safe CURIEs of the CRS used to render the map, except if the content is in the <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> CRS,
- assert that the headers of the response include a Content-Bbox: header with the actual geospatial boundary of the rendered map,
- assert that the Content-Bbox: coordinates are in the response CRS (indicated in the Content-Crs: or <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> if it is not present) and contains four comma-separated numbers representing the lower-left and upper-right corners of the response honoring the CRS coordinates order,
- assert that if the geospatial resource has a temporal aspect (e.g., if a temporal extent is defined in the collection description or in the dataset landing page), the headers of the response include a Content-Datetime: header with the actual datetime instant or datetime interval of the rendered map.
- assert that a Content-Datetime: response header representing a temporal interval, if present, uses the notation time-instant / time-instant,
- assert that if Content-Datetime: response header is present, time instants, whether a single value or the time-instant of an interval, are expressed as defined in RFC 3339, section 5.6 format, using either UTC time or local time offsets, but also allowing for the additional formats yyyy, yyyy-mm, yyyy-mm-dd, yyyy-mm-ddThhZ (or e.g., yyyy-mm-ddThh-04:00) and yyyy-mm-ddThh:mmZ (or e.g., yyyy-mm-ddThh-04:00),
- assert that the body of the response contains a map encoded in the negotiated format.

### A.1.3. Abstract Test for Requirement Map Conformance Success

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.3

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/core/conformance-success

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 3: /req/core/conformance-success

**TEST PURPOSE** For implementations having a mechanism to advertise conformance classes, verify that it reports conformance to this Standard correctly.

**Given:** a conformance resource in a recognized format, such as the OGC API JSON /conformance resource

**When:** retrieving that resource from the API endpoint

**Then:**

**TEST METHOD**

- assert that the list of conformance classes that are supported by this API implementation instance includes at minimum <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/core>. This list of conformance classes can also be used to select which other abstract tests to perform as listed in the Table 1 and indicated in the tests preconditions.

## A.2. Conformance Class “Map Tilesets”

#### CONFORMANCE CLASS A.2

**IDENTIFIER** <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/tilesets>

**REQUIREMENTS CLASS** Requirements class 2: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/tilesets>

**TARGET TYPE** Web API

**CONFORMANCE TESTS** Abstract test A.4: /conf/tilesets/desc-links  
Abstract test A.5: /conf/tilesets/tiles-parameters

### A.2.1. Abstract Test for Requirement desc-links

## ABSTRACT TEST A.4

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/tilesets/desc-links

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 4: /req/tilesets/desc-links

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports map tilesets

**Given:** a geospatial data resource conforming to this Standard, to “Map Tilesets”, to OGC API – Tiles and providing a description resource including links

**When:** retrieving the geospatial data resource description

**TEST METHOD** Then:

- assert that the geospatial data resource (e.g., collection or landing page description’s links property) includes a link with the href pointing to a tileset list supported that presents a tile aspect of this geospatial data resource and with rel: [ogc-rel:tilesets-map]

## A.2.2. Abstract Test for Requirement tiles-parameters

## ABSTRACT TEST A.5

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/tilesets/tiles-parameters

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 5: /req/tilesets/tiles-parameters

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports relevant parameters for map tilesets

**Given:** a geospatial data resource conforming to this Standard, to “Map Tilesets”, to OGC API – Tiles, and to Maps requirements classes introducing parameters relevant for map tiles

**When:** retrieving the map tiles with parameters for the *background*, *display resolution*, *spatial*

**TEST METHOD** *subsetting* (only for subset and subset-crs parameters, and only if a vertical dimension is available), *general subsetting*, and *scaling* requirements classes

**Then:**

- assert that tiles responses reflect the relevant map parameters used for the requests

**NOTE:** This conformance class depends on OGC API – Tiles – Part 1: Core “Tilesets List” conformance class to which the implementation must also conform.

## A.3. Conformance Class “Background”

## CONFORMANCE CLASS A.3

|                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER         | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/background">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/background</a>                                                                                                                                                              |
| REQUIREMENTS CLASS | Requirements class 3: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/background">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/background</a>                                                                                                                                          |
| TARGET TYPE        | Web API                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| CONFORMANCE TESTS  | Abstract test A.6: /conf/background/bgcolor-definition<br>Abstract test A.7: /conf/background/transparent-definition<br>Abstract test A.8: /conf/background/void-color-definition<br>Abstract test A.9: /conf/background/void-transparent-definition<br>Abstract test A.10: /conf/background/map-success |

### A.3.1. Abstract Test for Requirement `bgcolor` parameter definition

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.6

|              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER   | /conf/background/bgcolor-definition                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| REQUIREMENT  | Requirement 6: /req/background/bgcolor-definition                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| TEST PURPOSE | Verify that the implementation supports the bgcolor parameter                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| TEST METHOD  | <p><b>Given:</b> a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core</p> <p><b>When:</b> retrieving a map without bgcolor parameter, with bgcolor using a hexadecimal value and with bgcolor using a W3C Web Color name</p> <p><b>Then:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- assert that the map operation supports a bgcolor parameter in hexadecimal red-green-blue color value (from 00 to FF, FF representing 255) for the background color of the map. For a six-digit hexadecimal value, the first and second digits specify the intensity of red. The third and fourth digits specify the intensity of green. The fifth and sixth digits specify the intensity of blue,</li><li>- assert that the map operation supports a bgcolor parameter in case-insensitive <a href="#">W3C web color name</a> for the background color of the map,</li><li>- assert that if bgcolor is not specified, and either transparent is set to false or the output format cannot encode transparency, and there is no style defined the server uses the background color specified by the requested style,</li><li>- assert that if bgcolor is not specified, and either transparent is set to false or the output format cannot encode transparency, and there is no style used or the style do not specify a background color, the background color is set to 0xFFFFFFFF.</li></ul> |

### A.3.2. Abstract Test for Requirement `transparent` parameter definition

## ABSTRACT TEST A.7

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/background/transparent-definition

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 7: /req/background/transparent-definition

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports the transparent parameter

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving a map for all combinations of (no transparent parameter, transparent=false` , transparent=true) and with and without bgcolor parameter

**Then:**

- assert that the server interprets transparent as a Boolean indicating whether the background of the map should be transparent,

**TEST METHOD**

- assert that, if transparent is not specified and a bgcolor is not specified, the server assumes a value of true,
- assert that, if transparent is not specified and a bgcolor is specified, the server assumes a value of false,
- assert that, if transparent is true and a bgcolor is specified, the server uses 0 for the background's opacity.

### A.3.3. Abstract Test for Requirement void-color parameter definition

## ABSTRACT TEST A.8

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/background/void-color-definition

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 8: /req/background/void-color-definition

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports the void-color parameter

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving a map without void-color parameter, with void-color using a hexadecimal value and with void-color using a W3C Web Color name

**Then:**

- assert that the map operation supports a void-color parameter which can be a hexadecimal red-green-blue color value (from 00 to FF, FF representing 255) for the parts of the map outside of

**TEST METHOD** the valid areas of the projection / CRS. For a six-digit hexadecimal value, the first and second digits specify the intensity of red. The third and fourth digits specify the intensity of green. The fifth and sixth digits specify the intensity of blue,

- assert that the map operation supports a case-insensitive W3C web color name the parts of the map outside of the valid areas of the projection / CRS,

- assert that if void-color is not specified, the same color value as for bgcolor (specified or default) is used for the parts of the map outside of the valid areas of the projection / CRS.

### A.3.4. Abstract Test for Requirement void-transparent parameter definition

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.9

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/background/void-transparent-definition

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 9: /req/background/void-transparent-definition

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports the void-transparent parameter

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving a map for all combinations of (no void-transparent parameter, void-transparent=false`), void-transparent=true) and with and without void-color parameter

**Then:**

- assert that the server interprets void-transparent as a Boolean indicating whether the parts of the map outside of the valid areas of the projection / CRS should be transparent,  
- assert that, if void-transparent is not specified, the server assumes the same value as for transparent (specified or default).

### A.3.5. Abstract Test for Requirement Background Map Success

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.10

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/background/map-success

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 10: /req/background/map-success

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation's response for the map retrieval operation with a background color and/or transparent parameter is correct

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** for all combinations of (no transparent parameter, transparent=false` , transparent=true) and (without bgcolor parameter, with bgcolor using a hexadecimal value and with bgcolor using a W3C Web Color name)

**Then:**

- assert that the color of the map in the areas with no data is exactly the one specified in the **TEST METHOD** bgcolor,  
- assert that the color in parts of the map outside of the valid areas of the projection / CRS is the one specified by void-color, or otherwise default to the same as the background color (whether specified by bgcolor or default),  
- assert that the transparency setting in parts of the map outside of the valid areas of the projection / CRS is the one specified by void-transparent, or otherwise default to the same as the background transparency setting (whether specified by transparent or default),

## ABSTRACT TEST A.10

- assert that, in case the output format allows it and in the absence of the transparent parameter (or if it is false), the opacity (alpha value) of the map in the areas with no data is exactly 100%, if transparent is false or 0% if transparent is true (if the renderer supports anti-aliasing, at the edges between data and no-data areas, the opacity is allowed to have a value between 0% and 100%).

## A.4. Conformance Class “Collection Selection”

### CONFORMANCE CLASS A.4

|                    |                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER         | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/collections-selection">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/collections-selection</a>                     |
| REQUIREMENTS CLASS | Requirements class 4: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/collections-selection">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/collections-selection</a> |
| TARGET TYPE        | Web API                                                                                                                                                                               |
| CONFORMANCE TESTS  | Abstract test A.11: /conf/collections-selection/collections-parameter<br>Abstract test A.12: /conf/collections-selection/collections-response                                         |

### A.4.1. Abstract Test for Requirement `collections` parameter definition

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.11

IDENTIFIER /conf/collections-selection/collections-parameter

REQUIREMENT Requirement 11: /req/collections-selection/collections-parameter

TEST PURPOSE Verify that the implementation supports the collections parameter

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core and that is understood to consist of multiple collections (e.g., a dataset advertising support for Dataset Map and featuring multiple collections)

TEST METHOD **When:** retrieving a map using the collections parameter with one and multiple `collectionsIds`  
**Then:**

- assert that an operation that acts on a resource consisting of multiple geospatial data sub-resources (e.g., a resource derived from a root dataset) supports an optional parameter `collections` as an array of comma-separated collection id strings,

## ABSTRACT TEST A.11

- assert that the parameter collections is supported by maps originating from resources consisting of multiple geospatial data sub-resources that can be addressed by identifiers (e.g. dataset map at {datasetAPI}/maps/),
- assert that implementations support both a comma-separated list of geospatial resource identifiers (e.g., collectionId's) and full URLs to local geospatial resources.

### A.4.2. Abstract Test for Requirement Collection Selection Response

## ABSTRACT TEST A.12

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/collections-selection/collections-response

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 12: /req/collections-selection/collections-response

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation responds correctly to map requests using the collections parameter

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core and that is understood to consist of multiple collections (e.g., a dataset advertising support for Dataset Map and featuring multiple collections)

**When:** retrieving a map using the collections parameter with one and multiple *collectionsIds*

**Then:**

**TEST METHOD**

- assert that only collections of geospatial data enumerated in the values of the collections parameter are used to generate the responses for the resource (map) to which they apply,
- assert that if there is more than one collection name and the style applied does not specify otherwise, the collections are rendered in the result in an order starting with the first (leftmost) collection and ending with the last (rightmost).

## A.5. Conformance Class “Scaling”

## CONFORMANCE CLASS A.5

**IDENTIFIER** <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/scaling>

**REQUIREMENTS CLASS** Requirements class 5: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req-scaling>

**TARGET TYPE** Web API

## CONFORMANCE CLASS A.5

### CONFORMANCE TESTS

Abstract test A.13: /conf/scaling/width-definition  
Abstract test A.14: /conf/scaling/height-definition  
Abstract test A.15: /conf/scaling/scale-denominator-definition

### A.5.1. Abstract Test for Requirement `width` parameter definition

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.13

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/scaling/width-definition

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 13: /req/scaling/width-definition

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports the (scaling) width parameter correctly for map requests

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving maps using width parameter for different values, as well as the same bbox parameter if spatial subsetting is supported, with and without height parameter, with and without mm-per-pixel parameter if display resolution is supported

**Then:**

- assert that the width value is interpreted as the horizontal size (columns) of the viewport where the response will be presented in pixel units (number of pixels),
- assert that an HTTP 4xx error is returned if the width number is not a positive integer number,
- assert that an error is returned if the value of the width exceeds the maxWidth property specified in the x-OGC-limits.maps object included in the service metadata,
- assert that an HTTP 4xx error is returned if the value of the width (specified or calculated) times

**TEST METHOD** height (specified or calculated) exceeds a maxPixels property from a x-OGC-limits.maps object included in the service metadata,

- assert that an HTTP 4xx error be returned if the width parameter is used together with the bbox (or subset for spatial dimensions) as well as the scale-denominator parameter,
- assert that an HTTP 4xx error is returned if the width parameter is used together with the scale-denominator parameter and the implementation does not also support the "Subsetting" requirements class,
- assert that, when the width parameter is omitted, the implementation uses an appropriate width which accurately reflects the default or requested scale established as the ratio between the horizontal dimension of the viewport and the corresponding size of the physical world, specifically for the local subset (bounding box) of the map being returned, and taking into consideration the default (0.28 mm/pixel) or specified display resolution (mm-per-pixel).

### A.5.2. Abstract Test for Requirement `height` parameter definition

## ABSTRACT TEST A.14

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/scaling/height-definition

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 14: /req/scaling/height-definition

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports responds the (scaling) height parameter correctly for map requests

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving maps using height parameter for different values, as well as the same bbox parameter if spatial subsetting is supported, with and without width parameter, with and without mm-per-pixel parameter if display resolution is supported

**Then:**

- assert that the height value is interpreted as the vertical size (rows) of the viewport where the response will be presented in pixel units (number of pixels),
- assert that an HTTP 4xx error is returned if the height value is not a positive integer number,
- assert that an HTTP 4xx error is returned if the value of the height exceeds the maxHeight property specified in the x-OGC-limits.maps object included in the service metadata,
- assert that an HTTP 4xx error is returned if the value of the width (specified or calculated) times height (specified or calculated) exceeds a maxPixels property from a x-OGC-limits.maps object included in the service metadata,
- assert that an HTTP 4xx error is returned if the height parameter is used together with the bbox (or subset for spatial dimensions) as well as the scale-denominator parameter,
- assert that an HTTP 4xx error is returned if the height parameter is used together with the scale-denominator parameter and the implementation does not also support the "Subsetting" requirements class,
- assert that, when the height parameter is omitted, the implementation uses an appropriate height which accurately reflects the default or requested scale established as the ratio between the vertical dimension of the viewport and the corresponding size of the physical world, specifically for the local subset (bounding box) of the map being returned.

**TEST METHOD**

### A.5.3. Abstract Test for Requirement `scale-denominator` parameter definition

## ABSTRACT TEST A.15

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/scaling/scale-denominator-definition

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 15: /req/scaling/scale-denominator-definition

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports the scale-denominator parameter correctly for map requests

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**TEST METHOD** **When:** retrieving maps using the scale-denominator parameter, combining all possibilities with and without width and/or height parameters, with and without bbox and center parameter if

## ABSTRACT TEST A.15

spatial subsetting is supported, with and without mm-per-pixel parameter if display resolution is supported

Then:

- assert that the scale-denominator value is interpreted as the number of real-world units corresponding to one of the same unit on the map (as printed or displayed), considering only the local subset of the map being returned, based on the selected (e.g., from display resolution requirements class) or default (0.28 mm/pixel) display resolution,
- assert that the implementation establishes the correspondence between real-world units and pixel units based on the equation:  $\text{physicalMetersPerPixel} = (\text{mm-per-pixel} / 1000 \text{ mm/m}) * \text{scale-denominator}$ , where the  $\text{physicalMetersPerPixel}$  are not necessarily the same as the CRS units (even if those units are expressed in meters) for the region of that CRS consisting of the map subset being returned,
- assert that an HTTP 4xx error is returned if the scale-denominator parameter is used together with width and/or height and the implementation does not declare conformance to the spatial subsetting requirements class (which specifies that the width and height parameters can also take on a subsetting role),
- assert that an HTTP 4xx error is returned if the scale-denominator parameter is used together with width and/or height as well as a bbox (or equivalent subset parameter for a spatial dimension),
- assert that, if the scale-denominator parameter is omitted, the implementation computes it as needed (for purposes such as applying scale-dependent symbology rules) based on the default or selected dimensions, display resolution, and the spatial subset of the map to return,
- assert that, for implementations also supporting "Subsetting", when the spatial subset of the map is not specified in the request, the scale-denominator value (default or specified) is used to compute this bounding box, taking into consideration the display resolution as well as the default or specified dimensions.

## A.6. Conformance Class "Display Resolution"

### CONFORMANCE CLASS A.6

|                    |                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER         | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/display-resolution">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/display-resolution</a>                     |
| REQUIREMENTS CLASS | Requirements class 6: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/display-resolution">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/display-resolution</a> |
| TARGET TYPE        | Web API                                                                                                                                                                         |
| CONFORMANCE TESTS  | Abstract test A.16: /conf/display-resolution/mm-per-pixel-definition<br>Abstract test A.17: /conf/display-resolution/map-success                                                |

## A.6.1. Abstract Test for Requirement mm-per-pixel parameter definition

### ABSTRACT TEST A.16

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/display-resolution/mm-per-pixel-definition

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 16: /req/display-resolution/mm-per-pixel-definition

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports the mm-per-pixel parameter

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving maps using the mm-per-pixel parameter, for different styles if styled maps are supported, combining all possibilities with and without width and/or height parameters, with and without bbox and center parameter if spatial subsetting is supported, with and without mm-per-pixel parameter if display resolution is supported

**TEST METHOD** **Then:**

- assert that the implementation interprets mm-per-pixel as the size (in millimeters) of a rendering device pixel,
- assert that an HTTP 4xx error is returned if the mm-per-pixel value is not a positive number,
- assert that, if the parameter mm-per-pixel is not provided, the server assumes that the pixel size is 0.28 millimeters (90.71 pixels per inch).

## A.6.2. Abstract Test for Requirement Display Resolution Map Success

### ABSTRACT TEST A.17

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/display-resolution/map-success

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 17: /req/display-resolution/map-success

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation responds correctly to map requests using the mm-per-pixel parameter

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving maps using the mm-per-pixel parameter, for different styles if styled maps are supported, combining all possibilities with and without width and/or height parameters, with and without bbox and center parameter if spatial subsetting is supported, with and without mm-per-pixel parameter if display resolution is supported

**TEST METHOD** **Then:**

- assert that for an implementation supporting the Maps API scaling requirements class, the implementation uses the mm-per-pixel value instead of the default 0.28 mm/pixel when establishing the relationship between the dimensions of the output image, the scale and the spatial extent of the map,

## ABSTRACT TEST A.17

- assert that the mm-per-pixel value is used instead of the default 0.28 mm/pixel when establishing scale for the purpose of applying styling and symbology rules to the map. For example, this needs to be considered for scale-dependent rule selectors as well as for graphical units in real world units (e.g., meters) or display units (e.g., millimeters).

## A.7. Conformance Class “Spatial Subsetting”

### CONFORMANCE CLASS A.7

|                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER         | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/spatial-subsetting">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/spatial-subsetting</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| REQUIREMENTS CLASS | Requirements class 7: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/spatial-subsetting">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/spatial-subsetting</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| TARGET TYPE        | Web API                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| CONFORMANCE TESTS  | Abstract test A.18: /conf/spatial-subsetting/bbox-crs<br>Abstract test A.19: /conf/spatial-subsetting/subset-crs<br>Abstract test A.20: /conf/spatial-subsetting/center-crs<br>Abstract test A.21: /conf/spatial-subsetting/bbox-definition<br>Abstract test A.22: /conf/spatial-subsetting/subset-definition<br>Abstract test A.23: /conf/spatial-subsetting/subset-response<br>Abstract test A.24: /conf/spatial-subsetting/center-definition<br>Abstract test A.25: /conf/spatial-subsetting/width-height<br>Abstract test A.26: /conf/spatial-subsetting/map-success |

### A.7.1. Abstract Test for Requirement `bbox-crs` parameter definition

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.18

IDENTIFIER /conf/spatial-subsetting/bbox-crs

REQUIREMENT Requirement 18: /req/spatial-subsetting/bbox-crs

TEST PURPOSE Verify that the implementation supports the bbox-crs parameter for specifying the CRS of the bbox parameter correctly

Given: a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

TEST METHOD When: retrieving maps using bbox and bbox-crs parameters for different values, as well as different values for the crs parameter if supported and applicable,

## ABSTRACT TEST A.18

Then:

- assert that the map retrieval operation supports a query parameter bbox-crs with a string,
- assert that for Earth centric data, the implementation supports <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> as a value,
- assert that if the bbox-crs is not indicated <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> is assumed,
- assert that if the storage (native) CRS is known, the storage CRS is supported as a value. Other conformance classes may allow additional values (see crs parameter definition),
- assert that the CRS expressed as URIs or as safe CURIEs is supported,
- assert that if the bbox parameter is not used, the bbox-crs is ignored.

## A.7.2. Abstract Test for Requirement `subset-crs` parameter definition

### ABSTRACT TEST A.19

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/spatial-subsetting/subset-crs

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 19: /req/spatial-subsetting/subset-crs

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports the subset-crs parameter for specifying the CRS of the subset parameter correctly

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving maps using subset and subset-crs parameters for different values (using the correct spatial axes), as well as different values for the crs parameter if supported and applicable,

**Then:**

- assert that the map operation supports a parameter subset-crs with a string,
- assert that for Earth centric data, <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> is supported as a value,
- assert that if the subset-crs is not indicated, <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> is assumed,
- assert that if the storage (native) CRS is known, the storage CRS is supported as a value. Other requirements classes may allow additional values (see crs parameter definition),
- assert that CRS expressed as URIs or as safe CURIEs is supported,
- assert that if no subset parameter referring to an axis of the CRS is used, the subset-crs is ignored.

## A.7.3. Abstract Test for Requirement `center-crs` parameter definition

## ABSTRACT TEST A.20

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/spatial-subsetting/center-crs

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 20: /req/spatial-subsetting/center-crs

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports the center-crs parameter for specifying the CRS of the center parameter correctly

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving maps using center and center-crs parameters for different values, as well as different values for the crs parameter if supported and applicable,

**Then:**

- assert that the map retrieval operation supports a parameter center-crs with a string,
- assert that for Earth centric data, <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> is supported as a value,
- assert that if the center-crs is not used, <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> is assumed,
- assert that if the storage (native) CRS is known, the storage CRS is supported as a value,
- assert that CRS expressed as URLs or as safe CURIEs are supported,
- assert that if no center parameter is used, the center-crs is ignored.

**TEST METHOD**

### A.7.4. Abstract Test for Requirement bbox parameter definition

## ABSTRACT TEST A.21

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/spatial-subsetting/bbox-definition

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 21: /req/spatial-subsetting/bbox-definition

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports the bbox parameter

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving maps using the bbox parameter (with and without the bbox-crs parameter),

**Then:**

- assert that the map operation supports a parameter bbox with a comma-separated list of four or six floating point numbers.

**TEST METHOD**

If the bounding box consists of six numbers, the first three numbers are the coordinates of the lower bound corner of a three-dimensional bounding box and the last three are the coordinates of the upper bound corner. The axis order is determined by the bbox-crs parameter value or longitude and latitude if the parameter is missing (<https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> axis order for a 2D bounding box, <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84h> for a 3D bounding box). For example in <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> the order is left\_long, lower\_lat, right\_long, upper\_lat,

## ABSTRACT TEST A.21

- assert that if the bbox parameter is used together with the center and/or with a subset parameter including any of the dimensions corresponding to those of the map bounding box, the server returns a 4xx client error.

### A.7.5. Abstract Test for Requirement spatial subsetting subset parameter definition

## ABSTRACT TEST A.22

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/spatial-subsetting/subset-definition

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 22: /req/spatial-subsetting/subset-definition

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports the subset parameter for spatial subsetting

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving maps using the subset parameter (with and without the subset-crs parameter, for the correct spatial axes),

**Then:**

- assert that the axis names Lat and Lon are supported for geographic CRS and E and N for projected CRS, which are to be interpreted as the best matching spatial axis in the CRS definition,
- assert that if a third spatial dimension is supported (if the resource's spatial extent bounding box is three dimensional), the implementation also supports a h dimension. This is the elevation above the ellipsoid in EPSG:4979 or CRS84h for geographic CRS and z for projected CRS, which are interpreted as the vertical axis in the CRS definition,
- assert that a 4xx error status code is returned if an axis name in the subset parameter value does not correspond to one of the axes of the subsetting CRS, is not an alias recommended to be supported (lat, Latitude, latitude, lon, long, Long, Longitude, longitude, e, easting, Easting, x, X, n, y, Y, Northing, northing, z, Z, H), and is not defined in the context of another

**TEST METHOD** supported requirements class,

- assert that if the *interval* values fall entirely outside the range of valid values defined for the identified axis, a 204 or 404 status code is returned,
- assert that, for a CRS where an axis can wrap around, such as subsetting across the dateline (anti-meridian) in a geographic CRS, a *low* value greater than *high* is supported to indicate an extent crossing that wrapping point,
- assert that coordinates are interpreted as values for the named axis of the CRS specified in the subset-crs parameter value or in <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> (<https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84h> for vertical dimension) if the subset-crs parameter is missing,
- assert that if the subset parameter including any of the dimensions corresponding to those of the map bounding box is used with a bbox and/or center parameter, the server returns a 4xx error,
- assert that multiple subset parameters are interpreted, as if all dimension subsetting values were provided in a single subset parameter (comma separated).

## A.7.6. Abstract Test for Requirement map subset response

### ABSTRACT TEST A.23

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/spatial-subsetting/subset-response

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 23: /req/spatial-subsetting/subset-response

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation responds correctly to map requests using the subset parameter

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving maps using the subset (with and without the subset-crs parameter)

**TEST METHOD** Then:

- assert that only the part of the resource that falls within the bounds of the subset interval and/or corresponds to the single point value is returned.

## A.7.7. Abstract Test for Requirement center parameter definition

### ABSTRACT TEST A.24

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/spatial-subsetting/center-definition

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 24: /req/spatial-subsetting/center-definition

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports the center parameter correctly

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving maps using the center parameter (with and without the center-crs parameter),

**Then:**

- TEST METHOD**
- assert that a center parameter is supported to specify the center of the subset of the map to include, with coordinates in the CRS specified in the center-crs parameter value or in <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84> if the center-crs parameter is missing,
  - assert that if the center parameter is used together with the bbox and/or with a subset parameter including any of the dimensions corresponding to those of the map bounding box, the server returns a 4xx client error.

## A.7.8. Abstract Test for Requirement subsetting width and height parameters definition

## ABSTRACT TEST A.25

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/spatial-subsetting/width-height

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 25: /req/spatial-subsetting/width-height

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports the width and height parameter for spatial subsetting when used together with the center and/or the scale-denominator parameters

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving maps using the center parameter together, with the width and/or height (with and without the center-crs parameter), with and without the scale-denominator parameter if scaling is supported

**Then:**

**TEST METHOD**

- assert that when the center parameter and/or the scale-denominator parameter is used, or if the scaling conformance class is not supported, a width and height parameter specifying the subset of the map to return around the specified or default center of the map is supported,
- assert that the scale of the map is considered whether returning the map at a native scale or resampled (e.g., using the scaling conformance class scale-denominator parameter), as well as the display resolution (either the default 0.28 mm/pixel, or the one specified by the mm-per-pixel parameter of the *display resolution* conformance class).

## A.7.9. Abstract Test for Requirement map subset success

## ABSTRACT TEST A.26

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/spatial-subsetting/map-success

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 26: /req/spatial-subsetting/map-success

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation responds correctly to map requests using subsetting parameters (bbox, subset or center)

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving maps using the bbox (with and without the bbox-crs parameter), subset (with and without the subset-crs parameter), and center parameter (with and without the center-crs parameter, with the width and/or height parameter, with and without the scale-

**TEST METHOD** denominator parameter if scaling is supported

**Then:**

- assert that the content of the response represents elements inside or intersecting with the spatial extent of the geographical area of the map identified with the subsetting coordinates.

## A.8. Conformance Class “Date and Time”

### CONFORMANCE CLASS A.8

|                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER         | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/datetime">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/datetime</a>                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| REQUIREMENTS CLASS | Requirements class 8: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/datetime">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/datetime</a>                                                                                                                                                               |
| TARGET TYPE        | Web API                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| CONFORMANCE TESTS  | Abstract test A.27: /conf/datetime/datetime-definition<br>Abstract test A.28: /conf/datetime/datetime-response<br>Abstract test A.29: /conf/datetime/subset-definition<br>Abstract test A.30: /conf/datetime/subset-response<br>Abstract test A.31: /conf/datetime/axis<br>Abstract test A.32: /conf/datetime/map-success |

### A.8.1. Abstract Test for Requirement `datetime` parameter definition

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.27

IDENTIFIER /conf/datetime/datetime-definition

REQUIREMENT Requirement 27: /req/datetime/datetime-definition

TEST PURPOSE Verify that the implementation supports the datetime parameter

Given: a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

When: retrieving maps using the datetime parameter

Then:

TEST METHOD - assert that the implementation supports an instant defined as specified by [RFC 3339, 5.6](#), with the exception that the server is only required to support the Z UTC time notation, and not required to support local time offsets,  
- assert that time intervals unbounded at the start or end are supported using a double-dot ( .. ) or an empty string for the start/end.

### A.8.2. Abstract Test for Requirement `datetime` parameter response

## ABSTRACT TEST A.28

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/datetime/datetime-response

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 28: /req/datetime/datetime-response

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation responds correctly to map requests using the datetime parameter

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving maps using the datetime parameter

**Then:**

- TEST METHOD**
- assert that if the datetime parameter is provided by the client and supported by the server, then only resources that have a temporal geometry that intersects the temporal information in the datetime parameter are part of the result set,
  - assert that using a datetime parameter all resources that does not have a temporal information associate are present in the map.

## A.8.3. Abstract Test for Requirement temporal subset parameter definition

### ABSTRACT TEST A.29

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/datetime/subset-definition

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 29: /req/datetime/subset-definition

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports temporal subsetting using the subset parameter

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving maps using the subset parameter with the time axis

**Then:**

- assert that the implementation supports a subset parameter, consisting of an axis name (time) followed by parentheses within which can be specified an interval consisting of two “time coordinate”s separated by a colon (:), or a single “time coordinate”, where a “time coordinate” consists of a single number, a string or an asterisk (\*),
- assert that the implementation supports an axis name time,

- TEST METHOD**
- assert that the implementation returns a 4xx status code if the axis name is not time (or its recommended aliases Time, t and T) and is not recognized in the context of another requirements class,
  - assert that if “time coordinates” fall entirely outside the range of valid values defined for the identified axis, a 204 or 404 status code is returned,
  - assert that “time coordinates” are interpreted as values for the CRS specified in the temporal extent, or Gregorian UTC time if it is not specified in the temporal extent,
  - assert that when Gregorian UTC time is used, the implementation supports time expressed using RFC 3339 section 5.6, with only support for the UTC ( Z ) notation required (meaning that support

## ABSTRACT TEST A.29

for local time offsets should not be tested), as well as the following additional partial date and time formats: yyyy, yyyy-mm, yyyy-mm-dd, yyyy-mm-ddThhZ, yyyy-mm-ddThh:mmZ,  
- assert that the implementation supports a \* value indicating the earliest available time (for low) or the latest available time (for high and when used as a single time instant),  
- assert that multiple subset parameters are interpreted as if all dimension subsetting values were provided in a single subset parameter (comma separated).

### A.8.4. Abstract Test for Requirement temporal subset response

## ABSTRACT TEST A.30

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/datetime/subset-response

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 30: /req/datetime/subset-response

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation responds correctly to temporal subsetting requests using the subset parameter

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving maps using the subset parameter with the time axis

**TEST METHOD** Then:

- assert that only the part of the resource that falls within the bounds of the subset interval and/or corresponds to the single point value is returned.

### A.8.5. Abstract Test for Requirement temporal axis

## ABSTRACT TEST A.31

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/datetime/axis

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 31: /req/datetime/axis

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports the time axis for temporal subsetting using the subset parameter

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving maps using the subset parameter with the time axis

**TEST METHOD** Then:

- assert that to subset a generic time dimension, the server supports time as axis name in the subset parameter.

## A.8.6. Abstract Test for Requirement temporal subsetting success

| ABSTRACT TEST A.32 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER         | /conf/datetime/map-success                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| REQUIREMENT        | Requirement 32: /req/datetime/map-success                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| TEST PURPOSE       | Verify that the implementation responds correctly to temporal subsetting requests                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| TEST METHOD        | <p>Given: a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core</p> <p>When: retrieving maps using the subset parameter with the time axis</p> <p>Then:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- assert that the content of that response is consistent with the requested datetime.</li></ul> |

## A.9. Conformance Class “General Subsetting”

---

| CONFORMANCE CLASS A.9 |                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER            | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/general-subsetting">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/general-subsetting</a>                     |
| REQUIREMENTS CLASS    | Requirements class 9: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/general-subsetting">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/general-subsetting</a> |
| TARGET TYPE           | Web API                                                                                                                                                                         |
| CONFORMANCE TESTS     | Abstract test A.33: /conf/general-subsetting/uniform-additional-dimensions<br>Abstract test A.34: /conf/general-subsetting/subset-definition                                    |

### A.9.1. Abstract Test for Requirement uniform additional dimensions

| ABSTRACT TEST A.33 |                                                                       |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER         | /conf/general-subsetting/uniform-additional-dimensions                |
| REQUIREMENT        | Requirement 33: /req/general-subsetting/uniform-additional-dimensions |

## ABSTRACT TEST A.33

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation describes additional dimensions in a uniform manner

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core for which an extent description is available (e.g., conforming successfully to either the “Collection Map” or “Dataset Map”)

**When:** retrieving the description of the data resource e.g., the collection (for “Collection Map”) or the landing page (for “Dataset Map”)

**TEST METHOD** Then:

- assert that the extent of any additional dimension(s) beyond temporal and spatial is described in a way similar to the temporal dimension, using the name of the dimension as a key and an object as value, with that object containing an `interval` property, a URI for the semantic definition, a unit of measure if applicable, and a grid definition if applicable, as specified in [extent-uad.yaml](#).

## A.9.2. Abstract Test for Requirement general subsetting `subset` parameter

### ABSTRACT TEST A.34

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/general-subsetting/subset-definition

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 34: /req/general-subsetting/subset-definition

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports general subsetting using the `subset` parameter

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving maps using the `subset` parameter for an additional dimension besides space and time

**Then:**

- assert that the implementation supports a `subset` parameter, consisting of an axis name followed by an interval or single value within parentheses, where an interval is separated by a colon (:),
- assert that all additional dimensions described in the extent of the collection are supported as axis name,

**TEST METHOD** - assert that a 4xx error status code is returned if an axis name not corresponding to the name of one of the *additional* dimensions in the extent of the collection, and not corresponding to the required or recommended aliases in the spatial subsetting and temporal subsetting requirements classes is used,  
- assert that when the `intervalOrSingle` values fall entirely outside the range of valid values defined for the identified axis, a 204 or 404 status code is returned,  
- assert that for an axis that can wrap around, a `low` value greater than `high` are supported to indicate an extent crossing that wrapping point,  
- assert that multiple `subset` parameters are interpreted as if all dimension subsetting values were provided in a single `subset` parameter (comma separated).

## A.10. Conformance Class “Coordinate Reference System”

### CONFORMANCE CLASS A.10

|                    |                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER         | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/crs">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/crs</a>                      |
| REQUIREMENTS CLASS | Requirements class 10: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/crs">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/crs</a> |
| TARGET TYPE        | Web API                                                                                                                                            |
| CONFORMANCE TESTS  | Abstract test A.35: /conf/crs/crs-definition<br>Abstract test A.36: /conf/crs/map-success                                                          |

### A.10.1. Abstract Test for Requirement crs parameter definition

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.35

IDENTIFIER /conf/crs/crs-definition

REQUIREMENT Requirement 35: /req/crs/crs-definition

TEST PURPOSE Verify that the implementation supports the output crs parameter for map requests

Given: a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core  
When: retrieving maps with the crs parameter for different available CRS and without  
Then:  
- assert that the map operation supports a crs string parameter,  
- assert that all CRSs listed in the collection (or collections) description are supported, or that [OGC:CRS84] is supported if no list of CRS is available,  
- assert that, if the spatial subsetting requirements class is also supported, the bbox-crs and the subset-crs also support those available CRS values when the same value is also specified in the crs parameter,  
- assert that the CRS values can be expressed either as URIs or as safe CURIEs.

### A.10.2. Abstract Test for Requirement CRS map success

## ABSTRACT TEST A.36

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/crs/map-success

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 36: /req/crs/map-success

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation responds correctly to map requests using the crs parameter

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**TEST METHOD** **When:** retrieving maps with the crs parameter for different available CRS and without  
**Then:**

- assert that the content of the map response is consistent with the requested CRS.

## A.11. Conformance Class “Orientation”

### CONFORMANCE CLASS A.11

**IDENTIFIER** <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/orientation>

**REQUIREMENTS CLASS** Requirements class 11: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/orientation>

**TARGET TYPE** Web API

**CONFORMANCE TESTS** Abstract test A.37: /conf/orientation/orientation  
Abstract test A.38: /conf/orientation/response-headers

### A.11.1. Abstract Test for Requirement `orientation` parameter

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.37

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/orientation/orientation

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 37: /req/orientation/orientation

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports the orientation parameter correctly for map requests

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**TEST METHOD** **When:** retrieving maps with the orientation parameter for different values and without  
**Then:**

## ABSTRACT TEST A.37

- assert that an orientation parameter that specifies the amount by which to rotate a map is supported, expressed as counterclockwise degrees, resulting in the viewing perspective being rotated by that same orientation in a clockwise direction,
- assert that when the orientation parameter is not specified, a zero orientation value is be assumed,
- assert that the orientation is applied to the map with the center of the selected spatial subset as the pivot point, or the center of the map if none is specified,
- assert that if an orientation parameter is used together with subset or bbox spatial subsetting parameter, the counterclockwise orientation is applied to the four corners of the clipping box associated to that subset, as if the equivalent center, width and height spatial subsetting query parameters were used instead, avoiding leaving empty corners in the final rotated map image.

## A.11.2. Abstract Test for Requirement orientation response headers

### ABSTRACT TEST A.38

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/orientation/response-headers

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 38: /req/orientation/response-headers

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation includes the correct response headers for map requests using the orientation parameter.

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**When:** retrieving maps with the orientation parameter for different values and without

**Then:**

**TEST METHOD** - assert that for responses to a map request where the orientation query parameter is used, a response header Content-Orientation: [value in decimal degrees] corresponding to the orientation of the map is returned,  
- assert that for responses to a map request where the orientation query parameter is used, the Content-Bbox response header reflects the bounding box in the map output CRS prior to the orientation being applied.

## A.12. Conformance Class “Custom Projection CRS”

### CONFORMANCE CLASS A.12

**IDENTIFIER** <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/projection>

## CONFORMANCE CLASS A.12

|                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| REQUIREMENTS CLASS | Requirements class 12: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/projection">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/projection</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| TARGET TYPE        | Web API                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| CONFORMANCE TESTS  | Abstract test A.39: /conf/projection/crs-proj-method<br>Abstract test A.40: /conf/projection/crs-proj-params<br>Abstract test A.41: /conf/projection/crs-proj-center-definition<br>Abstract test A.42: /conf/projection/crs-datum<br>Abstract test A.43: /conf/projection/response-headers<br>Abstract test A.44: /conf/projection/projections-resource<br>Abstract test A.45: /conf/projection/projections-response |

### A.12.1. Abstract Test for Requirement `crs-proj-method` parameter

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.39

IDENTIFIER /conf/projection/crs-proj-method

REQUIREMENT Requirement 39: /req/projection/crs-proj-method

TEST PURPOSE Verify that the implementation supports the `crs-proj-method` parameter correctly for map requests

Given: a map resource that conformed successfully to Conformance class A.1: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core> and passing Abstract test A.45: /conf/projection/projections-response

TEST METHOD When: retrieving maps with the `crs-proj-method` parameter for different available values as listed in /projectionsAndDatums

Then:

- assert that a `crs-proj-method` parameter supporting selection of a projection operation method is supported,
- assert that CURIEs are supported in addition to URLs to specify the projection method.

### A.12.2. Abstract Test for Requirement `crs-proj-params` parameter

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.40

IDENTIFIER /conf/projection/crs-proj-params

REQUIREMENT Requirement 40: /req/projection/crs-proj-params

## ABSTRACT TEST A.40

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports the `crs-proj-params` parameter correctly for map requests

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to Conformance class A.1: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core> and passing Abstract test A.45: /conf/projection/projections-response

**When:** retrieving maps with the `crs-proj-method` parameter for different available values and different values of the associated method parameters (specified using the `crs-proj-params` query parameter) as listed in /projectionsAndDatums

**TEST METHOD**

**Then:**

- assert that a `crs-proj-params` parameter is supported that enables selection of one or more values for operation method parameters, with values in between parentheses ( ) following the URI of a projection parameter, and different parameters separated by value (e.g., `crs-proj-params=[epsg-parameter:8823](40),[epsg-parameter:8824](90)`),
- assert that in addition to CURIEs, URIs are also supported to specify the projection parameters.

### A.12.3. Abstract Test for Requirement `crs-proj-center` parameter

## ABSTRACT TEST A.41

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/projection/crs-proj-center-definition

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 41: /req/projection/crs-proj-center-definition

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports the `crs-proj-center` parameter correctly for map requests

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to Conformance class A.1: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core> and passing Abstract test A.45: /conf/projection/projections-response

**When:** retrieving maps with the `crs-proj-method` parameter for different available values as listed in /projectionsAndDatums and the `crs-proj-center` parameter for different values

**Then:**

- TEST METHOD**
- assert that a `crs-proj-center` parameter of the form `Lat(centerLat),Lon(centerLon)` is supported to facilitate the selection of the most relevant projection parameters to center a custom projection,
  - assert that the projection center Lat value is mapped to the first matching operation method parameter available for the selected operation method of the projection query parameter, in the epsg-parameter order 8832, 8823, 8801, 8811,
  - assert that the projection-center Lon value is mapped to the first matching operation method parameter available for the selected operation method of the projection query parameter, in the epsg-parameter order 8802, 8812, 8833.

## A.12.4. Abstract Test for Requirement crs-datum parameter

### ABSTRACT TEST A.42

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/projection/crs-datum

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 42: /req/projection/crs-datum

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports the crs-datum parameter correctly for map requests

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to Conformance class A.1: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core> and passing Abstract test A.45: /conf/projection/projections-response

**When:** retrieving maps with the crs-datum parameter for different available values as listed in /projectionsAndDatums

**TEST METHOD** **Then:**

- assert that a crs-datum parameter as a URI allowing to select a datum for the output CRS is supported,
- assert that CURIEs are supported in addition to URIs to specify the datum parameter,
- assert that if a crs-datum parameter is not specified, the native (storage) CRS datum is assumed (the WGS84 ensemble [epsg-datum:6326] datum is assumed if the native CRS is not declared).

## A.12.5. Abstract Test for Requirement custom CRS projection response headers

### ABSTRACT TEST A.43

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/projection/response-headers

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 43: /req/projection/response-headers

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation responds to map requests using the crs-proj-method parameter and/or crs-datum with the correct response headers

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to Conformance class A.1: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/core> and passing Abstract test A.45: /conf/projection/projections-response

**TEST METHOD** **When:** retrieving maps with the crs-proj-method parameter for different available values, different values of the associated method parameters (using both crs-proj-center and crs-proj-params), and different values for crs-datum as listed in /projectionsAndDatums

**Then:**

## ABSTRACT TEST A.43

- assert that for responses to a map request where the `crs-proj-method` query parameter was used, a response header `Content-Crs-Method: <[URI]>` including the URI of the projection operation method is returned,
- assert that a response header `Content-Crs-Method-Params: <URI>=[value]; ...` is returned, including the URI of the projection operation parameters and its value for each parameter specified using the `crs-proj-method` or `crs-proj-center` query parameters,
- assert that for responses to a map request where the `crs-datum` query parameter was used, a response header `Content-Crs-Datum: <[URI]>` corresponding to the URI of the projection operation method is returned,
- assert that for responses to a map request specifying the `crs-proj-method` query parameter, a `Content-Crs` response header is not included,
- assert that for responses to a map request specifying the `crs-proj-method` query parameter, the CRS of the `Content-Bbox` response header coordinates is in the custom CRS defined by this operation method and its parameters.

## A.12.6. Abstract Test for Requirement /projectionsAndDatums resource

### ABSTRACT TEST A.44

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/projection/projections-resource

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 44: /req/projection/projections-resource

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports retrieving the list of available projection operation methods, their parameters, and the list of available datums at /projectionsAndDatums

**Given:** an API implementation being tested

**When:** retrieving the /projectionsAndDatums resource

**TEST METHOD** Then:

- assert that a GET operation at /projectionsAndDatums providing a JSON representation is supported.

## A.12.7. Abstract Test for Requirement /projectionsAndDatums response

### ABSTRACT TEST A.45

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/projection/projections-response

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 45: /req/projection/projections-response

## ABSTRACT TEST A.45

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation responds correctly to a request for the /projectionsAndDatums resource, conforming to the JSON schema and using the correct URIs

**Given:** an API implementation being tested passing Abstract test A.44: /conf/projection/projections-resource

**When:** retrieving the /projectionsAndDatums resource

**Then:**

- assert that the implementation includes in its response for the /projectionsAndDatums resource the complete list of custom CRS projection operation methods supported for map retrieval operations,
- assert that the implementation includes in its response for the /projectionsAndDatums resource the complete list of custom CRS datums supported for map retrieval operations,
- assert that in the JSON representation, the list of supported projection operation methods is provided as a dictionary (associative array) value for a methods property associating operation method objects (including optional title and description properties) to the corresponding identifiers to be used as values for the crs-proj-method query parameter,
- assert that these operation method identifiers are safe CURIEs when a registered URI exists for the method,
- assert that in the JSON representation, the list of supported datums are provided as a dictionary (associative array) value for a datums property associating datum objects to the corresponding identifiers to be used as values for the crs-datum query parameter,

**TEST METHOD**

- assert that these datum identifiers are safe CURIEs when a registered URI exists for the datum,
- assert that the datum object includes an ellipsoid property specifying the safe CURIE for the associated ellipsoid and may contain additional optional title and description properties,
- assert that in the JSON representation, the operation method objects include all valid parameters for that method as a dictionary (associative array) value for a parameters property to method parameters object (including optional title and description properties) to the corresponding identifiers to be used as values for the crs-proj-params query parameter,
- assert that these method parameters are safe CURIEs when a registered URI exists for the parameter (to avoid repeating the same parameter, those objects may use a JSON pointer (\$ref) to a top-level parameters property in the same custom projections JSON document),
- assert that in the JSON representation, the operation method objects include centerLatParam and/or centerLonParam properties (as applicable) whose values are the identifiers corresponding to the parameters for which values specified for the crs-proj-center query parameter will be mapped, in a manner consistent with requirement /req/projection/crs-proj-center-definition.

## A.13. Conformance Class “Collection Map”

### CONFORMANCE CLASS A.13

**IDENTIFIER**

<https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/collection-map>

## CONFORMANCE CLASS A.13

|                    |                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| REQUIREMENTS CLASS | Requirements class 13: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/collection-map">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/collection-map</a> |
| TARGET TYPE        | Web API                                                                                                                                                                  |
| CONFORMANCE TESTS  | Abstract test A.46: /conf/collection-map/desc-links<br>Abstract test A.47: /conf/collection-map/desc-crs<br>Abstract test A.48: /conf/collection-map/map-operation       |

### A.13.1. Abstract Test for Requirement collection description links

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.46

IDENTIFIER /conf/collection-map/desc-links

REQUIREMENT Requirement 46: /req/collection-map/desc-links

TEST PURPOSE Verify that the implementation links correctly from the collection description resource to the map resource

**Given:** a collection from an API implementation conforming to OGC API – Common – Part 2: Geospatial Data “Collections” conformance class

**When:** retrieving the JSON representation of the description for that collection

TEST METHOD Then:

- assert that the OGC API collection description includes a link with relation type <https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/map> (or [ogc-rel:map]) and the href pointing to a the map resource for this collection.

### A.13.2. Abstract Test for Requirement collection description CRS

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.47

IDENTIFIER /conf/collection-map/desc-crs

REQUIREMENT Requirement 47: /req/collection-map/desc-crs

TEST PURPOSE Verify that the implementation describes the supported CRS correctly in its collection description resources

**Given:** an API implementation conforming to OGC API – Common – Part 2: Geospatial Data

TEST METHOD “Collections” conformance class

**When:** retrieving the JSON representation of the description for that collection

## ABSTRACT TEST A.47

Then:

- assert that the crs property in the collection object of a geospatial collection contains URIs or safe CURIEs for the list of CRSs supported by the server for that collection,
- assert that if the collection is available more efficiently (e.g., if it is stored in the server in that CRS) using a particular CRS (the native CRS, also *called storage CRS*) that is not <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84>, a storageCrs property in the collection object of a geospatial collection is the URI or the safe CURIE for that CRS,
- assert that if a storageCrs property is used and that is not <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84>, an overall bounding box (and optional inner bounding boxes for sparse data) is provided in a storageCrsBbox property within the spatial dimension of the extent following the same schema as the CRS84 bbox.

### A.13.3. Abstract Test for Requirement collection map operation

## ABSTRACT TEST A.48

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/collection-map/map-operation

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 48: /req/collection-map/map-operation

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports retrieving maps from an OGC API collection resource as defined in the OGC API – Common Standard.

**Given:** a collection correctly linking to a map resource as per /conf/collection-map/desc-links

**When:** retrieving a map for that collection resource as per /conf/core

**TEST METHOD** Then:

- assert that every OGC API collection available as a map supports an HTTP GET operation to a URL /collections/{collectionId}/map to retrieve a map from that collection resource.

## A.14. Conformance Class “Dataset Map”

## CONFORMANCE CLASS A.14

**IDENTIFIER** <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/dataset-map>

**REQUIREMENTS CLASS** Requirements class 14: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/dataset-map>

**TARGET TYPE** Web API

## CONFORMANCE CLASS A.14

|                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CONFORMANCE TESTS | Abstract test A.49: /conf/dataset-map/landingpage<br>Abstract test A.50: /conf/dataset-map/desc-extent<br>Abstract test A.51: /conf/dataset-map/desc-crs<br>Abstract test A.52: /conf/dataset-map/operation |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### A.14.1. Abstract Test for Requirement dataset landing page

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.49

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/dataset-map/landingpage

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 49: /req/dataset-map/landingpage

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports linking properly from an OGC API landing page to a map resource

**Given:** a dataset provided by an API implementation conforming to OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core

**When:** retrieving the JSON representation of the landing page description for that dataset

**TEST METHOD** Then:

- assert that the deployed API endpoint landing page includes a link with relation type <https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/map> (or [ogc-rel:map]) to the dataset map URL at /map.

### A.14.2. Abstract Test for Requirement dataset description extent

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.50

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/dataset-map/desc-extent

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 50: /req/dataset-map/desc-extent

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation describes the extent of the dataset correctly from the landing page

**Given:** a dataset provided by an API conforming to OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core

**When:** retrieving the JSON representation of the landing page description for that dataset

**Then:**

- assert that an extent CRS is provided in an “extent” property of the API landing page following the same schema as the “extent” property for the collection (see OGC API – Common – Part 2: Geospatial Data).

### A.14.3. Abstract Test for Requirement dataset description CRS

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.51

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/dataset-map/desc-crs

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 51: /req/dataset-map/desc-crs

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation describes the supported CRS correctly in its landing page resource

**Given:** a dataset provided by an API conforming to OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core

**When:** retrieving the JSON representation of the landing page description for that dataset

**Then:**

- assert that the crs property in the landing page of a dataset contains URIs or safe CURIEs for the list of CRSs supported by the dataset as a whole,

- assert that if the dataset is available more efficiently using a particular CRS that is not <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84>, a storageCrs property in the landing page of a dataset is the URI or the safe CURIE for that CRS as a value,
- assert that if a storageCrs property is used and that is not <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84>, an overall bounding box (and optional inner bounding boxes for sparse data) is provided in a storageCrsBbox property within the spatial dimension of the extent following the same schema as the CRS84 bbox.

#### TEST METHOD

### A.14.4. Abstract Test for Requirement dataset map operation

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.52

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/dataset-map/operation

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 52: /req/dataset-map/operation

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports retrieving a 'dataset maps' resource exposed by the OGC API – Maps implementation

**Given:** an OGC API dataset correctly linking to a map resource as per /conf/dataset-map/landingpage

**When:** retrieving a map for that dataset resource as per /conf/core

**Then:**

- assert that the implementation supports an HTTP GET operation for the /map URL to retrieve a map from the dataset API endpoint in the default style.

## A.15. Conformance Class “Styled Map”

### CONFORMANCE CLASS A.15

|                    |                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER         | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/styled-map">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/styled-map</a>                      |
| REQUIREMENTS CLASS | Requirements class 15: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/styled-map">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/styled-map</a> |
| TARGET TYPE        | Web API                                                                                                                                                          |
| CONFORMANCE TESTS  | Abstract test A.53: /conf/styled-map/desc-links<br>Abstract test A.54: /conf/styled-map/map-operation                                                            |

### A.15.1. Abstract Test for Requirement styled map links

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.53

IDENTIFIER /conf/styled-map/desc-links

REQUIREMENT Requirement 53: /req/styled-map/desc-links

TEST PURPOSE Verify that the implementation links correctly from a style resource to a map resource

Given: a list of styles provided by an API implementation conforming to OGC API – Styles

When: retrieving the JSON representation of that list of styles

Then:

TEST METHOD - assert that if the deployed API endpoint has a mechanism to expose links associated with styled geospatial resources (e.g., the OGC API – Styles list of styles at /styles for a dataset or at /collections/{collectionId}/styles for a collection), those styled resources include a link with link relation <https://www.opengis.net/def/rel/ogc/1.0/map> (or [ogc-rel:map]) and the href pointing to the map associated with that styled resource.

### A.15.2. Abstract Test for Requirement styled map operation

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.54

IDENTIFIER /conf/styled-map/map-operation

## ABSTRACT TEST A.54

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 54: /req/styled-map/map-operation

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports retrieving maps from OGC API – Styles style resources

**Given:** a style correctly linking to a map resource as per /conf/styled-map/desc-links

**When:** retrieving a map for that style as per /conf/core

**Then:**

**TEST METHOD** - assert that every resource for which a styled map is available supports an HTTP GET operation to a .../styles/{styleId}/map URL to retrieve a map for a particular style (e.g., /collections/{collectionId}/styles/{styleId} for a styled collection map or /styles/{styleId}/map for a styled dataset map).

## A.16. Conformance Class “PNG”

### CONFORMANCE CLASS A.16

**IDENTIFIER** <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/png>

**REQUIREMENTS CLASS** Requirements class 16: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/png>

**TARGET TYPE** Web API

**CONFORMANCE TEST** Abstract test A.55: /conf/png/content

### A.16.1. Abstract Test for Requirement PNG map content

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.55

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/png/content

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 55: /req/png/content

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation supports retrieving maps negotiating for PNG content

**Given:** a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

**TEST METHOD** **When:** retrieving a PNG (image/png) representation of a map resource through HTTP content negotiation

## ABSTRACT TEST A.55

Then:

- assert that every 200-response of the server with the media type image/png is a PNG document representing only one map,
- assert that the colors of the PNG represent the geospatial features or coverage values in the map,
- assert that the alpha channel of the PNG is used when partial transparency is required,
- assert that all maps representing parts of the same resource or resources and using the same style follow the same portrayal rules.

## A.17. Conformance Class “JPEG”

### CONFORMANCE CLASS A.17

|                                                         |                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER                                              | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/jpeg">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/jpeg</a>                      |
| REQUIREMENTS CLASS                                      | Requirements class 17: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/jpeg">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/jpeg</a> |
| TARGET TYPE                                             | Web API                                                                                                                                              |
| CONFORMANCE TEST Abstract test A.56: /conf/jpeg/content |                                                                                                                                                      |

### A.17.1. Abstract Test for Requirement JPEG map content

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.56

IDENTIFIER /conf/jpeg/content

REQUIREMENT Requirement 56: /req/jpeg/content

TEST PURPOSE Verify that the implementation supports retrieving maps negotiating for JPEG content

Given: a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

When: retrieving a JPEG (image/jpeg) representation of a map resource through HTTP content negotiation

TEST METHOD

Then:

- assert that every 200-response of the server with the media type image/jpeg is a JPEG document representing only one map,

## ABSTRACT TEST A.56

- assert that the colors of the JPEG represent geospatial features and/or coverage values in the map,
- assert that all maps representing parts of the same resource or resources and using the same style follow the same portrayal rules.

## A.18. Conformance Class “JPEG XL”

### CONFORMANCE CLASS A.18

|                    |                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER         | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/jpegxl">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/jpegxl</a>                      |
| REQUIREMENTS CLASS | Requirements class 18: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/jpegxl">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/jpegxl</a> |
| TARGET TYPE        | Web API                                                                                                                                                  |
| CONFORMANCE TEST   | Abstract test A.57: /conf/jpegxl/content                                                                                                                 |

### A.18.1. Abstract Test for Requirement JPEG XL map content

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.57

IDENTIFIER /conf/jpegxl/content

REQUIREMENT Requirement 57: /req/jpegxl/content

TEST PURPOSE Verify that the implementation supports retrieving maps negotiating for JPEG XL content

Given: a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

When: retrieving a JPEG XL (image/jxl) representation of a map resource through HTTP content negotiation

Then:

- TEST METHOD
- assert that every 200-response of the server with the media type image/jxl is a JPEG XL file representing only one map,
  - assert that the JPEG XL is a color image representing the geospatial features or coverage values in the map,
  - assert that all maps representing parts of the same resource or resources and using the same style follow the same portrayal rules.

## A.19. Conformance Class “TIFF”

---

### CONFORMANCE CLASS A.19

|                                                         |                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER                                              | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/tiff">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/tiff</a>                      |
| REQUIREMENTS CLASS                                      | Requirements class 19: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/tiff">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/tiff</a> |
| TARGET TYPE                                             | Web API                                                                                                                                              |
| CONFORMANCE TEST Abstract test A.58: /conf/tiff/content |                                                                                                                                                      |

### A.19.1. Abstract Test for Requirement TIFF map content

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.58

IDENTIFIER /conf/tiff/content

REQUIREMENT Requirement 58: /req/tiff/content

TEST PURPOSE Verify that the implementation supports retrieving maps negotiating for TIFF and/or GeoTIFF content

Given: a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

When: retrieving a TIFF (image/tiff) and GeoTIFF (image/tiff; application=geotiff) representation of a map resource through HTTP content negotiation

Then:

TEST METHOD - assert that every 200-response of the server with the media type image/tiff is a TIFF document representing only one map,  
- assert that the TIFF file represents colors by using an image palette or RGB combination,  
- assert that all maps representing parts of the same resource or resources and using the same style follow the same portrayal rules or represent data with the same reference and units of measure.

## A.20. Conformance Class “SVG”

---

## CONFORMANCE CLASS A.20

|                    |                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER         | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/svg">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/svg</a>                      |
| REQUIREMENTS CLASS | Requirements class 20: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/svg">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/svg</a> |
| TARGET TYPE        | Web API                                                                                                                                            |
| CONFORMANCE TEST   | Abstract test A.59: /conf/svg/content                                                                                                              |

### A.20.1. Abstract Test for Requirement SVG map content

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.59

IDENTIFIER /conf/svg/content

REQUIREMENT Requirement 59: /req/svg/content

TEST PURPOSE Verify that the implementation supports retrieving maps negotiating for SVG content

Given: a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

When: retrieving an SVG (image/svg+xml) representation of a map resource through HTTP content negotiation

TEST METHOD Then:

- assert that every 200-response of the server with the media type image/svg+xml is an SVG document representing only a map,
- assert that the SVG coordinates inside the map start at 0,0 and end in the width and height of the request.

## A.21. Conformance Class “HTML”

---

## CONFORMANCE CLASS A.21

|                    |                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER         | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/html">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/html</a>                      |
| REQUIREMENTS CLASS | Requirements class 21: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/html">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/html</a> |
| TARGET TYPE        | Web API                                                                                                                                              |

## CONFORMANCE CLASS A.21

CONFORMANCE TEST Abstract test A.60: /conf/html/content

### A.21.1. Abstract Test for Requirement HTML map content

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.60

IDENTIFIER /conf/html/content

REQUIREMENT Requirement 60: /req/html/content

TEST PURPOSE Verify that the implementation supports retrieving maps negotiating for HTML content

Given: a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

When: retrieving an (text/html) HTML representation of a map resource HTTP content negotiation

TEST METHOD

Then:

- assert that every 200-response of the server with the media type text/html is an HTML document representing the geospatial data as maps.

## A.22. Conformance Class “API Operations”

#### CONFORMANCE CLASS A.22

IDENTIFIER <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/api-operations>

REQUIREMENTS CLASS Requirements class 22: <https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/api-operations>

TARGET TYPE Web API

CONFORMANCE TESTS Abstract test A.61: /conf/api-operations/completeness  
Abstract test A.62: /conf/api-operations/operation-id

### A.22.1. Abstract Test for Requirement API Operations completeness

## ABSTRACT TEST A.61

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/api-operations/completeness

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 61: /req/api-operations/completeness

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation completely and correctly describes the map resources

**Given:** an API conforming to OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core “Landing Page” conformance class,  
**When:** retrieving the API description

**Then:**

- assert that the API definition provides paths for all map, custom projections, tileset, tilesets list and tile resources provided by the API instance,
- assert that the resource paths defined in the API definition are consistent with the links to the same resources provided by the landing page, collections, tileset and tilesets list resources,
- assert that the resource paths defined in the API definition provide the description of the parameters that the map, tileset and tile resources need to operate that are specified in corresponding conformance classes.

**TEST METHOD**

### A.22.2. Abstract Test for Requirement API Operation identifiers

## ABSTRACT TEST A.62

**IDENTIFIER** /conf/api-operations/operation-id

**REQUIREMENT** Requirement 62: /req/api-operations/operation-id

**TEST PURPOSE** Verify that the implementation uses the correct API operation identifier suffixes to identify the resources defined in the Maps API Standard

**Given:** an API implementation conforming to OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core “Landing Page” conformance class supporting an API definition language with a concept of operation identifiers

**TEST METHOD** **When:** retrieving the API description

- assert that the paths defined in the API definition have an operation identifier value ending with the relevant dot-separated suffix corresponding to the resource as specified in Table 11.

### A.23. Conformance Class “CORS”

## CONFORMANCE CLASS A.23

|                    |                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDENTIFIER         | <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/cors">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/conf/cors</a>                      |
| REQUIREMENTS CLASS | Requirements class 23: <a href="https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/cors">https://www.opengis.net/spec/ogcapi-maps-1/1.0/req/cors</a> |
| TARGET TYPE        | Web API                                                                                                                                              |
| CONFORMANCE TEST   | Abstract test A.63: /conf/cors/cors                                                                                                                  |

### A.23.1. Abstract Test for Requirement CORS

#### ABSTRACT TEST A.63

IDENTIFIER /conf/cors/cors

REQUIREMENT Requirement 63: /req/cors/cors

TEST PURPOSE Verify that the implementation completely and correctly implement CORS

Given: a map resource that conformed successfully to /conf/core

When: retrieving resources, such as the map resource, defined in the supported requirements classes from a web page at a different origin

TEST METHOD

Then:

- assert that the implementation supports CORS as defined by W3C (<https://www.w3.org/TR/2020/SPSD-cors-20200602/>) for these resources.



B

## ANNEX B (INFORMATIVE) EXAMPLES

---

## ANNEX B (INFORMATIVE) EXAMPLES

This annex provides a set of examples illustrating requests and responses for retrieving maps using capabilities defined by this OGC API – Maps Standard.

### B.1. Default map

The first example shows the response of a map endpoint with a request with no parameters (<https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/OpenMapLocal/map>).

The server is free to respond with any bbox and any width and height. In this case the server default behavior is to render the whole of Great Britain in a 631×1024 pixels canvas.



**Figure B.1** – Great Britain data served as a map without specifying any parameter. From: [Ordnance Survey OS OpenMap - Local product](#). Contains OS data © Crown copyright and database right 2023.

The headers of the response provide additional information on the bounding box (Content-Bbox) and the CRS of the image (Content-Crs is omitted here, indicating the default CRS84).

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Expires: Tue, 19 Nov 2024 09:58:40 GMT
Access-Control-Allow-Origin: *
Vary: Accept, Accept-Encoding, Prefer
Content-Type: image/png
Content-Bbox: -8.756498,49.814737,1.848147,60.948016
Content-Length: 538037
```

## B.2. Collection description

---

This map resource is attached to an [OGC API – Common – Part 2](#) collection origin, which is available from the parent resource path:

<https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/OpenMapLocal>

An example JSON collection description response for the OS OpenMap Local collection is below:

```
{
 "id" : "OpenMapLocal",
 "title" : "OS OpenMap - Local",
 "description" : "OS OpenMap - Local, by the OrdnanceSurvey",
 "attribution" : "OS OpenMap - Local",
 "extent" : {
 "spatial" : {
 "bbox" : [[-8.7564981947375, 49.8147371614082,
 1.8481470870055, 60.9480162305518]]
 } },
 "minScaleDenominator" : 4265.4591676995678,
 "minCellSize" : 0.0000107288361,
 "storageCrs" : "https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84",
 "crs" : [
 "https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84",
 "https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/EPSG/0/4326",
 "https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/EPSG/0/3857",
 "https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/EPSG/0/3395"
],
 "links" : [
 { "rel" : "self", "title" : "Information about the OpenMapLocal data",
 "href" : "/ogcapi/collections/OpenMapLocal"
 },
 { "rel" : "[ogc-rel:map]", "title" : "Default map",
 "href" : "/ogcapi/collections/OpenMapLocal/map"
 },
 { "rel" : "[ogc-rel:tilesets-map]",
 "title" : "Map tilesets available for this collection",
 "href" : "/ogcapi/collections/OpenMapLocal/map/tiles"
 },
 { "rel" : "[ogc-rel:tilesets-vector]",
 "title" : "Multi-layer vector tilesets available for this collection",
 "href" : "/ogcapi/collections/OpenMapLocal/tiles"
 },
 { "rel" : "[ogc-rel:styles]", "title" : "Styles for OpenMapLocal",
 "href" : "/ogcapi/collections/OpenMapLocal/styles"
 }
]
}
```

## B.3. Scaling and subsetting the map

---

The following examples are going to be centered on The O2 (formerly known as the Millenium Dome) shown here in a night aerial picture. Note that the roundness of the feature facilitates validating its aspect ratio in physical units.



**Figure B.2 – The O2 dome peninsula (image captured from a plane by an editor of this standard while working on this annex)**

The following map request only specifies a center point parameter next to the O2 Dome:

<https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/OpenMapLocal/map?center=0,51.5>

The server interprets the coordinates as CRS84 and decides to respond with a low scale denominator (high level of detail) suitable for the dataset and with reasonable default width and height (1024×1024 pixels). The response is shown in the following image.



**Figure B.3** – Map of OS OpenMap - Local close to The O2 dome, specifying center at 51.5°N, 0°E. Contains OS data © Crown copyright and database right 2023.

The headers of the response provide additional information on the bounding box (Content-Bbox). Since the Content-Crs is not specified in this case, the client can assume CRS84.

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Expires: Tue, 19 Nov 2024 09:57:36 GMT
Access-Control-Allow-Origin: *
Vary: Accept, Accept-Encoding, Prefer
```

```
Content-Type: image/png
Content-Bbox: -0.008805,51.494504,0.008805,51.505496
Content-Length: 188490
```

The following request is equivalent, using the value of that Content-Bbox as the value for the bbox parameter instead of using center, explicitly specifying the same width and height dimensions as those default values chosen by the server for the above request:

<https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/OpenMapLocal/map?bbox=-0.008805,51.494504,0.008805,51.505496&width=1024&height=1024>

There is also an equivalent notation for the previous request that uses subset instead of bbox:

[https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/OpenMapLocal/map?subset=Lat\(51.494504:51.505496\),Lon\(-0.008805:0.008805\)&width=1024&height=1024](https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/OpenMapLocal/map?subset=Lat(51.494504:51.505496),Lon(-0.008805:0.008805)&width=1024&height=1024)

As explained in the scale and aspect ratio considerations section, clients wishing to retrieve identical responses from different implementations should specify either of these bbox or subset parameters, together with a width and height. A smaller image can be requested by specifying height of the image.

<https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/OpenMapLocal/map?center=0,51.5&height=512>



**Figure B.4 – Map of OS OpenMap - Local centered on The O2 dome using height=512**

The server would be free to act otherwise, but it automatically adjusted the width to also be 512. Notice that to preserve the same default scale with a smaller image, the spatial region (bounding box) was reduced accordingly. This behavior is particularly important when the client requests a specific scale, as in the following request which specifies the same center point parameter as before, but requests a map for a 1:8000 scale:

<https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/OpenMapLocal/map?center=0,51.5&height=512&scale-denominator=8000>



**Figure B.5 – Map of OS OpenMap - Local centered on The O2 dome at 1:8000 scale using scale-denominator. Contains OS data © Crown copyright and database right 2023.**

The server responded with the same width and height (512×512 pixels). The headers of the response provide additional information on the bounding box of the image.

Clients can easily zoom in and out by simply changing the scale-denominator parameter as in the following images at different scales:



**Figure B.6 – Map of OS OpenMap - Local centered on The O2 dome at 1:12,000 scale using scale-denominator. Contains OS data © Crown copyright and database right 2023.**



**Figure B.7** – Map of OS OpenMap - Local centered on The O2 dome at 1:20,000 scale using scale-denominator. Contains OS data © Crown copyright and database right 2023.



**Figure B.8** – Map of OS OpenMap - Local centered on The O2 dome at 1:30,000 scale using scale-denominator. Contains OS data © Crown copyright and database right 2023.



**Figure B.9** – Map of OS OpenMap - Local centered on The O2 dome at 1:50,000 scale using scale-denominator. Contains OS data © Crown copyright and database right 2023.

A rectangular image could be “forced” by also specifying the width of the image to be 1024, while keeping the rest of the parameters:

<https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/OpenMapLocal/map?center=0,51.5&scale-denominator=50000&width=1024&height=512>



**Figure B.10** – Wider 1024x512 map of OS OpenMap - Local centered on the O2 dome at 1:50,000 scale. Contains OS data © Crown copyright and database right 2023.

For this last request, specifying both the width and height, the center, the scale-denominator, combined with the fact that the default value of mm-per-pixel is defined as 0.28 mm/pixel, defines all the parameters necessary to make the subsetting and scaling *mostly* predictable by the client. As explained in the scale and aspect ratio considerations section, implementations may compute the dimensions and bounding boxes not explicitly specified slightly differently. Because of these potential differences, clients should always consider the bounding box information in the response headers for georeferencing purposes, as well as the actual dimensions of the image returned. This will also avoid problems in cases where the server may decide to correct the center or bounding box due to the values being out of range. The center and scale-denominator parameters are primarily intended as convenience parameters to let the server automatically compute ideal bounding boxes and dimensions, while specifying a spatial region using the bbox or subset parameter as well as width and height should result in more deterministic responses.

## B.4. Temporal subsetting

---

Spatial datasets are often also organized with a temporal dimension in addition to two or three spatial dimensions (some of these datasets are sometimes called time series or datacubes).

The following example reuses the same subsetting and scaling from the earlier rectangular 1:50,000 map of London, and applies it to a Sentinel-2 collection of images. The `datetime` parameter selects a particular day of the time series (April 1st, 2022).

<https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/sentinel2-l2a/map?center=0,51.5&scale-denominator=50000&datetime=2022-04-01&width=1024&height=512>



**Figure B.11** – A map of Sentinel-2 data from April 1st, 2022 of the same area. From: [Copernicus SENTINEL-2 operated by ESA](#).

There is an equivalent notation for the previous request that uses `subset` for the `time` axis instead of the `datetime` parameter. This subsetting axis can also be combined within a single `subset` parameter value together with subsetting for the `Lat` and `Lon` axes, instead of using `center` and `scale-denominator`, or `bbox`. Note that in this case, the time string should be enclosed in double quotes.

[https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/sentinel2-l2a/map?width=1024&height=512&subset=time\("2022-04-01"\),Lat\(51.467787:51.532213\),Lon\(-0.103152:0.103152\)](https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/sentinel2-l2a/map?width=1024&height=512&subset=time(\)

## B.5. Styled maps

---

The following two example requests, for the same region and time of interest, illustrate two additional styles available from the same sentinel-2 datacube, in addition to its default Red, Green, Blue natural color style. The first style, symbolizes the Scene Classification Layer categories:

<https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/sentinel2-l2a/styles/scl/map?center=0,51.5&scale-denominator=50000&datetime=2022-04-01&width=1024&height=512>



**Figure B.12** – A map of a scene classification layer style for Sentinel-2 data from April 1st, 2022 of London. From: [Copernicus SENTINEL-2 operated by ESA](#).

The next style, using style identifier evi2, represents an Enhanced Vegetation Index (EVI) calculated from bands B02 (blue), B04 (red) and B08 (near infrared):

<https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/sentinel2-l2a/styles/evi2/map?center=0,51.5&scale-denominator=50000&datetime=2022-04-01&width=1024&height=512>



**Figure B.13** – A map of an Enhanced Vegetation Index (EVI) style for Sentinel-2 data from April 1st, 2022 of London. From: [Copernicus SENTINEL-2 operated by ESA](#).

The following example requests illustrate how to retrieve two different styles for a High Resolution (1 m) Digital Terrain Model (DTM) of the Red River in Manitoba, from Natural Resources Canada. Styles with identifiers *style1* and *style2* are available at `.../styles/{styleId}`, through [OGC API – Styles](#), and provide links to map resources.

[https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/HRDEM-RedRiver:DTM:1m/styles/style1/map?  
center=-97.06,49.937&scale-denominator=28000&height=600&width=1000](https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/HRDEM-RedRiver:DTM:1m/styles/style1/map?center=-97.06,49.937&scale-denominator=28000&height=600&width=1000)



**Figure B.14** – Styled map of [High Resolution DTM](#) from Natural Resources Canada (*style1*)

[https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/HRDEM-RedRiver:DTM:1m/styles/style2/map?  
center=-97.06,49.937&scale-denominator=28000&height=600&width=1000](https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/HRDEM-RedRiver:DTM:1m/styles/style2/map?center=-97.06,49.937&scale-denominator=28000&height=600&width=1000)



**Figure B.15** – Styled map of High Resolution DTM from  
Natural Resources Canada, showing alternative style2

## B.6. Additional dimensions

---

It is also common for spatial datasets, especially for weather and climate data, to feature additional dimensions beyond space and time, such as pressure levels, or additional time dimensions relating to forecasting. These can all be handled in a generic manner also using the subset parameter. The following two examples illustrate how to retrieve a map of the temperature for the whole world at *pressure* (an extra dimension) levels of 500 and 850 hectopascals:

[https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/climate:cmip5:byPressureLevel:temperature/map?  
subset=pressure\(500\)&datetime=2023-07-03&bgcolor=gray](https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/climate:cmip5:byPressureLevel:temperature/map?subset=pressure(500)&datetime=2023-07-03&bgcolor=gray)



**Figure B.16** – A map of CMIP5 temperature data of the world at 500 hPa on July 3rd, 2023 (from [Copernicus climate data store](#))

[https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/climate:cmip5:byPressureLevel:temperature/map?  
subset=pressure\(850\)&datetime=2023-07-03&bgcolor=gray](https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/climate:cmip5:byPressureLevel:temperature/map?subset=pressure(850)&datetime=2023-07-03&bgcolor=gray)



**Figure B.17** – A map of CMIP5 temperature data of the world at 850 hPa on July 3rd, 2023 (from [Copernicus climate data store](#))

The following examples illustrate how to retrieve a map of the relative humidity for the whole world at pressure (an extra dimension) levels of 500 and 975 hectopascals:

[https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/climate:era5:relativeHumidity/map?subset=pressure\(500\)&datetime=2023-04-06T23:00:00Z&bgcolor=skyBlue](https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/climate:era5:relativeHumidity/map?subset=pressure(500)&datetime=2023-04-06T23:00:00Z&bgcolor=skyBlue)



**Figure B.18** – A map of ERA5 reanalysis data showing Relative Humidity of the whole world at 500 hPa on April 6th, 2023 at 23:00:00 UTC (from [Copernicus climate data store](#))

[https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/climate:era5:relativeHumidity/map?subset=pressure\(975\)&datetime=2023-04-06T23:00:00Z&bgcolor=skyBlue](https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/climate:era5:relativeHumidity/map?subset=pressure(975)&datetime=2023-04-06T23:00:00Z&bgcolor=skyBlue)



**Figure B.19** – A map of ERA5 reanalysis data showing Relative Humidity of the whole world at 975 hPa on April 6th, 2023 at 23:00:00 UTC (from [Copernicus climate data store](#))

The following [JSON collection description](#) for these relative humidity examples illustrates how to describe the extent of multidimensional datasets, including the details of both regular and irregular grids.

An example JSON collection description response for ERA5 relative humidity is below:

```
{
 "id" : "climate:era5:relativeHumidity", "title" : "ERA5 Relative Humidity",
 "attribution" : "<a href='https://cds.climate.copernicus.eu/cdsapp#!/dataset/
reanalysis-era5-pressure-levels'>Copernicus Climate Data Store",
 "extent" : {
 "spatial" : {
 "bbox" : [[-180, -90, 180, 90]],
 "grid" : [
 { "cellsCount" : 2049, "resolution" : 0.17578125 },
 { "cellsCount" : 1025, "resolution" : 0.17578125 }
]
 },
 "temporal" : {
 "interval" : [["2023-04-01T00:00:00Z", "2023-04-06T23:00:00Z"]],
 "grid" : { "cellsCount" : 144, "resolution" : "PT1H" }
 },
 "pressure" : {
 "definition": "https://qudt.org/vocab/quantitykind/AtmosphericPressure",
 "unit" : "hPa",
 "interval" : [[1.0, 1000.0]],
 "grid" : {
 "cellsCount" : 37,
 "coordinates" : [1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 5.0, 7.0, 10.0, 20.0,
 30.0, 50.0, 70.0, 100.0, 125.0, 150.0, 175.0, 200.0,
 225.0, 250.0, 300.0, 350.0, 400.0, 450.0, 500.0, 550.0,
 600.0, 650.0, 700.0, 750.0, 775.0, 800.0, 825.0, 850.0,
 875.0, 900.0, 925.0, 950.0, 975.0, 1000.0]
 }
 }
 },
 "minCellSize" : 0.17578125,
 "minScaleDenominator" : 69885283.0035897195339,
 "crs" : [
 "https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84",
 "https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/EPSG/0/4326",
 "https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/EPSG/0/3857",
 "https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/EPSG/0/3395"
],
 "storageCrs" : "https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/OGC/1.3/CRS84",
 "links" : [
 { "rel" : "self",
 "title" : "Information about the ERA5 Relative Humidity",
 "href" : "/ogcapi/collections/climate:era5:relativeHumidity"
 },
 { "rel" : "[ogc-rel:map]", "title" : "Default map",
 "href" : "/ogcapi/collections/climate:era5:relativeHumidity/map"
 },
 { "rel" : "[ogc-rel:tilesets-map]", "title" : "Map tilesets available for this collection",
 "href" : "/ogcapi/collections/climate:era5:relativeHumidity/map/tiles"
 },
 { "rel" : "[ogc-rel:styles]", "title" : "Styles for Relative Humidity",
 "href" : "/ogcapi/collections/climate:era5:relativeHumidity/styles"
 },
 { "rel" : "[ogc-rel:schema]", "title" : "Schema",
 "href" : "/ogcapi/collections/climate:era5:relativeHumidity/schema"
 }
]
}
```

```
 },
 {
 "rel" : "[ogc-rel:coverage]", "title" : "Coverage for Relative Humidity",
 "href" : "/ogcapi/collections/climate:era5:relativeHumidity/coverage"
 },
 {
 "rel" : "[ogc-rel:tilesets-coverage]",
 "title" : "Coverage tilesets available for this collection",
 "href" : "/ogcapi/collections/climate:era5:relativeHumidity/tiles"
 }
]
 }
```

## B.7. Coordinate Reference Systems

---

While introducing the selection of an alternative output Coordinate Reference System (World Mercator, EPSG:3395) to the default native CRS (`storageCRS`) returned so far (CRS84), the following examples will zoom out significantly to a 1:20,000,000 scale. At the scales used in previous examples, the difference between those two CRSs would not be distinguishable, since the server automatically preserve scales in both dimensions, which makes the responses for those two CRSs almost visually equivalent on a local scale. These examples will illustrate the two CRS by requesting a map for the Blue Marble Next Generation (2004) from NASA Earth Observatory's Visible Earth, first explicitly requesting EPSG:4326 (whose main difference from CRS84 is that axis order is Latitude, Longitude).

[https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/blueMarble/map?center=0,51.5&scale-denominator=20000000&crs=\[EPSG:4326\]](https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/blueMarble/map?center=0,51.5&scale-denominator=20000000&crs=[EPSG:4326])

Notice that the response header now includes the `Content-Crs:` header, and that the `Content-Bbox:` axis order now follows the latitude, longitude order:

```
Content-Crs: <https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/EPSC/0/4326>
Content-Bbox: 25.729221,-28.573112,77.270779,28.573112
```



**Figure B.20 – Map of NASA Earth Observatory's Blue Marble Next Generation (2004), in Plate Carrée (EPSG:4326) output crs**

Now EPSG:3395 can be requested instead using:

[https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/blueMarble/map?center=0,51.5&scale-denominator=20000000&crs=\[EPSG:3395\]](https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/blueMarble/map?center=0,51.5&scale-denominator=20000000&crs=[EPSG:3395])



**Figure B.21** – Map of NASA Earth Observatory's Blue Marble Next Generation (2004), using World Mercator (EPSG:3395) output crs

The Content-Crs: contains the coordinates of the bounding box selected from the requested scale and default dimensions, which can be used to make a request that will generate an equivalent response.

Content-Crs: <<https://www.opengis.net/def/crs/EPSC/0/3395>>  
Content-Bbox: -4596385.263861,2080129.089271,4596385.263861,11273386.415933

In order to also specify the bounding box in that EPSG:3395 CRS, the following request also makes use of the bbox-crs parameter, which otherwise always defaults to CRS84 (regardless of the native CRS or selected output CRS).

[https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/blueMarble/map?bbox-crs=\[EPSG:3395\]&bbox=-4596385.263861,2080129.089271,4596385.263861,11273386.415933&crs=\[EPSG:3395\]](https://maps.gnosis.earth/ogcapi/collections/blueMarble/map?bbox-crs=[EPSG:3395]&bbox=-4596385.263861,2080129.089271,4596385.263861,11273386.415933&crs=[EPSG:3395])

## B.8. Calculations to infer appropriate dimensions

---

In these examples, the client specifies a bounding box (using bbox or subset) from 30°N to 50°N and 0°E to 30°E and a scale-denominator of 1:10,000,000. The server needs to compute appropriate map image dimensions from these parameters that are provided (no default dimensions or center are used). The default 0.28 mm/pixel display resolution is used since mm-per-pixel is not specified. Two examples are given, one in a geographic Plate Carrée CRS (EPSG:4326) and one in a projected World Mercator CRS (EPSG:3395) (which uses a bounding box of the same geographic area transformed into coordinates in that CRS).

Regardless of the CRS, the number of physical meters that each pixel should represent can be computed with:

```
physicalMetersPerPixel = (mm-per-pixel / 1000 mm/m) * scale-denominator
physicalMetersPerPixel = (0.28 mm/pix / 1000 mm/m) * 10,000,000 = 2800 m/pix
```

### B.8.1. Plate Carrée (EPSG:4326) Example

The first example is for an EPSG:4326 Plate Carrée CRS.

```
GET /collections/blueMarble/map?
subset=Lat(30:50),Lon(0:30)&
scale-denominator=10000000&
crs=[EPSG:4326]

GET /collections/blueMarble/map?
bbox=0,30,30,50&
scale-denominator=10000000&
crs=[EPSG:4326]
```

The latitude delta is 20°, whereas the longitude delta is 30°.

The implementation could assume the WGS84 111,319.49 meters / degree of latitude (metersPerDegLat below), and use the most equatorial latitude of the subset (30°N) to compute the numbers of meters / degree of longitude with:

```
metersPerDegLon = metersPerDegLat * cos(mostEquatorialLat)
metersPerDegLon = 111,319.49 m/deg * cos(30°) = 96,405.51 m/deg
```

The dimensions can then simply be computed (rounding to the nearest integer) with:

```
width = deltaLon * metersPerDegLon / physicalMetersPerPixel
height = deltaLat * metersPerDegLat / physicalMetersPerPixel

width = 30 deg * 96,405.51 m/deg / 2800 m/pix = 1033 pixels
height = 20 deg * 111,319.49 m/deg / 2800 m/pix = 795 pixels
```

### B.8.2. World Mercator (EPSG:3395) Example

This second example is for the same geographical area, but for an EPSG:3395 World Mercator CRS instead.

```

GET /collections/blueMarble/map?
subset=E(0:3339584.72),N(3482189.09:6413524.59)&
scale-denominator=10000000&
subset-crs=[EPSG:3395]&
crs=[EPSG:3395]

GET /collections/blueMarble/map?
bbox=0,3482189.09,3339584.72,6413524.59&
scale-denominator=10000000&
crs=[EPSG:3395]&
bbox-crs=[EPSG:3395]

```

The easting delta is 3,339,584.72, whereas the northing delta is 2,931,335.50.

To correctly apply the scale, the ratio between CRS units and physical meters must be considered. This could be calculated for the center point: (E: 1,669,792.36, N: 4,947,856.84) which corresponds to (40.7514917°N, 15°E). One approach could be to project two points 1 degree of longitude apart around the center point, using the implementation's projection library, to obtain the number of CRS units per degree of longitude. Transforming (40.7514917°N, 14.5°E) to EPSG:3395 yields (E: 1,614,132.62, N: 4,947,856.85) and transforming (40.7514917°N, 15.5°E) yields (E: 1,725,452.11, N: 4,947,856.85). The resulting easting delta (oneDegEastingDelta below) is 111,319.49, which in this case can be recognized as the actual physical meters per degree at the equator, rather than at the center latitude used. Therefore, in this case implementations effectively need to apply the reverse correction that had to be applied for Plate Carrée when considering the numbers of true meters per Easting unit. First, metersPerDegLon can be computed as in the previous example:

```

metersPerDegLon = metersPerDegLat * cos(centerLat)
metersPerDegLon = 111,319.49 m/deg * cos(40.7514917°) = 84,329.856 m/deg

```

Then the meters per easting unit can be computed:

```

metersPerEastingUnit = metersPerDegLon / oneDegEastingDelta
metersPerEastingUnit = 84,329.856 m/deg / 111,319.49 m/deg = 0.75754799

```

Notice that in this particular case of World Mercator, this is simply:

```

metersPerEastingUnit = cos(centerLat)
metersPerEastingUnit = cos(40.7514917°) = 0.75754799

```

The implementation could also apply similar logic to compute the meters per northing unit:

```
metersPerNorthingUnit = metersPerDegLat / oneDegNorthingDelta
```

However, in the case of World Mercator, it could simply assume that metersPerNorthingUnit is equal to metersPerEastingUnit.

Finally, the map image dimensions can be computed with:

```

width = deltaEasting * metersPerEastingUnit / physicalMetersPerPixel
height = deltaNorthing * metersPerNorthingUnit / physicalMetersPerPixel

width = 3,339,584.72 m * 0.75754799 / 2800 m/pix = 904 pixels
height = 2,931,335.50 m * 0.75754799 / 2800 m/pix = 793 pixels

```

## B.9. Calculations to infer appropriate bounding boxes

---

In these examples, the client specifies a center, a scale-denominator, and optionally width and / or height dimensions. If either the width or height is not specified, the server could pick default values, such as making the missing dimension equal to the one provided or selecting default values. The examples will assume that the client explicitly requested a 1024 x 768 map at a 1:10,000,000 scale for a location centered on (41.8902°N, 12.4922°E).

To compute the extent in CRS units, first the physical meters per pixel can be computed using the same formula as earlier (and same result in this case):

```
physicalMetersPerPixel = (mm-per-pixel / 1000 mm/m) * scale-denominator
physicalMetersPerPixel = (0.28 mm/pix / 1000 mm/m) * 10,000,000 = 2800 m/pix
```

### B.9.1. Plate Carrée (EPSG:4326) Example

This first example requests a map in an EPSG:4326 output CRS, using that same CRS for specifying the center as well:

```
GET /collections/blueMarble/map?
center=41.8902,12.4922&
center-crs=[EPSG:4326]&
scale-denominator=10000000&
crs=[EPSG:4326]&
width=1024&
height=768
```

A simple approach to computing the bounding box is to extend away from the center in both directions by the distance in CRS units corresponding to half the respective pixel dimension.

To consider the latitude of the subsets for computing the longitude extent, the latitude extent will be computed first, using the inverse of the earlier height computation:

```
deltaLat = height * physicalMetersPerPixel / metersPerDegLat
deltaLat = 768 pix * 2800 m/pix / 111,319.49 m/deg = 19.317372 degrees
```

A constant 111,319.49 meters / degree of latitude is assumed here again, rather than the more accurate polynomial equation taking into consideration the ellipsoid eccentricity mentioned earlier, which would yield slightly different results.

The lower and upper latitudes of the bounding can then be easily computed by adding and subtracting half this delta to the requested center latitude:

```
lowerLat = 41.8902°N - 19.317372 deg / 2 = 32.231514°N
upperLat = 41.8902°N + 19.317372 deg / 2 = 51.548886°N
```

From this, the most equatorial latitude can be established to be 32.231514°N, which can then be used to compute the meters per degrees of longitude, exactly like for the dimension computation examples:

```
metersPerDegLon = metersPerDegLat * cos(mostEquatorialLat)
metersPerDegLon = 111,319.49 m/deg * cos(32.231514°) = 94,165.15 m/deg
```

and the longitude delta can then be computed similarly:

```
deltaLon = width * physicalMetersPerPixel / metersPerDegLon
deltaLon = 1024 pix * 2800 m/pix / 94,165.15 m/deg = 30.448632 degrees
```

and from this the left (West) and right (East) longitude bounds:

```
leftLon = 12.4922° E - 30.448632 deg / 2 = 2.732116° W
rightLon = 12.4922° E + 30.448632 deg / 2 = 27.716516° E
```

which completes the bounding box calculation. Expressed in the default CRS84 (longitude, latitude) order, the bbox parameter would be:

```
bbox=-2.732116,32.231514,27.716516,51.548886.
```

## B.9.2. World Mercator (EPSG:3395) Example

This second example requests a map in an EPSG:3395 output CRS, using that same CRS for specifying the center as well:

```
GET /collections/blueMarble/map?
 center=1390625.34,5116008.23&
 center-crs=[EPSG:3395]&
 scale-denominator=100000000&
 crs=[EPSG:3395]&
 width=1024&
 height=768
```

The center corresponds to the same point as the previous example (41.8902°N, 12.4922°E).

Using the same approach as for the earlier dimension computation examples, transforming test points one degree apart, the number of physical meters per easting and northing units can be computed specifically for the requested center point (E: 1390625.34, N: 5116008.23). Like earlier, in the specific case of World Mercator the oneDegEastingDelta and oneDegNorthingDelta is constant at 111,319.49 m/deg, which corresponds to the number of meters per degree at the equator. The number of physical meters per degree of longitude at the center latitude (41.8902°N) can be computed in the same way as previous examples:

```
metersPerDegLon = metersPerDegLat * cos(centerLat)
metersPerDegLon = 111,319.49 m/deg * cos(41.8902°) = 82,869.096 m/deg
```

Then the meters per easting unit can be computed:

```
metersPerEastingUnit = metersPerDegLon / oneDegEastingDelta
metersPerEastingUnit = 82,869.096 m/deg / 111,319.49 m/deg = 0.74442576
```

Again, in the case of World Mercator, this is simply:

```
metersPerEastingUnit = cos(centerLat)
metersPerEastingUnit = cos(41.8902°) = 0.74442576
```

The implementation could also apply similar logic to compute the meters per northing unit:

```
metersPerNorthingUnit = metersPerDegLat / oneDegNorthingDelta
```

And again, in this case it could simply assume that metersPerNorthingUnit is equal to metersPerEastingUnit.

Then the delta easting and northing can be computed using the inverse of the equations used for computing dimensions:

```
deltaEasting = width * physicalMetersPerPixel / metersPerEastingUnit
deltaNorthing = height * physicalMetersPerPixel / metersPerNorthingUnit
deltaEasting = 1024 pix * 2800 m/pix / 0.74442576 = 3,851,559.355 m
deltaNorthing = 768 pix * 2800 m/pix / 0.74442576 = 2,888,669.516 m
```

and finally this bounding box can be extended away from the requested center point (E: 1,390,625.34, N: 5,116,008.23):

```
leftEasting = 1,390,625.34 - 3,851,559.355 / 2 = -535,154.34
lowNorthing = 5,116,008.23 - 2,888,669.516 / 2 = 3,671,673.47
rightEasting = 1,390,625.34 + 3,851,559.355 / 2 = 3,316,405.02
upperNorthing = 5,116,008.23 + 2,888,669.516 / 2 = 6,560,342.99
```

which completes the bounding box calculation. Expressed in EPSG:3395 together with the required bbox-crs, the parameters would be:

```
bbox=-535154.34,3671673.47,3316405.02,6560342.99&bbox-crs=[EPSG:3395].
```



C

# ANNEX C (INFORMATIVE) EVOLUTION FROM OGC WEB MAP SERVICE

---

## ANNEX C (INFORMATIVE)

### EVOLUTION FROM OGC WEB MAP SERVICE

#### C.1. From OGC Web Services to OGC Web APIs

OGC Web Service (OWS) Standards have historically implemented a Remote-Procedure-Call-over-HTTP architectural style using Extensible Markup Language (XML) for the metadata and capability payloads. This was state-of-the-art when initial versions of OGC Web Services were originally designed in the late 1990s and early 2000s. The resource-oriented RESTful Web API style is proposed as an alternative architectural style to the RPC pattern which was service-oriented. The Web Map Service 1.3 Standard did not describe a resource oriented architectural style or a Web API definition. This OGC API – *Maps* Standard specifies requirements for a Web API that follows the Web architecture and the [W3C/OGC best practices for sharing Spatial Data on the Web](#) as well as the [W3C best practices for sharing Data on the Web](#).

The OGC API – *Maps* – Part 1: Core Standard provides the necessary elements to incorporate *maps* support into a broader Web API implementation. These elements can be incorporated in an API based on OGC API – Features – Part 1: Core or can be incorporated in a Web API implementation based on OGC API – Common – Part 1: Core. Both specify a kernel of a Web API approach to services that follows current resource-oriented architecture practices in the OGC. The OGC API – Common Standard provides the foundation upon which implementations of the OGC API Standards can be built. OGC API – Common can be combined with the *Maps* API Standard and other resource-specific OGC API Standards to build an OGC standards-based API implementation. However, the *Maps* API Standard is specified in a way that can extend OGC API – Common but does not make OGC API – Common mandatory. In this way, the *Maps* API Standard can be reused as a building block in other APIs that do not follow the OGC API pattern.

Beside the general alignment with the architecture of the Web (e.g., consistency with HTTP/HTTPS, hypermedia controls), another goal for OGC API Standards is modularization. This goal has several facets:

- Clear separation between Core requirements and more advanced capabilities. The OGC API – *Maps* – Part 1: Core Standard presents the requirements that are relevant for almost any organization wanting to share or use maps at a fine-grained level. Additional capabilities deemed useful for several communities will be specified as extensions to the Core API.
- Technologies that change more frequently are decoupled and specified in separate modules (“requirements classes” in OGC terminology). This enables, for example, the use/

re-use of new encodings for spatial data or Web API definition (such as new version of the OpenAPI description document).

- Modularization is not just about a single “service”. OGC API Standards define building blocks that can be reused in API implementations in general. In other words, a server supporting OGC API – *Maps* should not be seen as a standalone service. Rather it should be viewed as a collection of Web API building blocks that together implement OGC API – *Maps* capabilities. A corollary for this is that it should be possible to implement an API that simultaneously conforms to conformance classes from the [OGC API – Features](#), [OGC API – Coverages](#), [OGC API – Maps](#), [OGC API – Tiles](#), and other future OGC API Standards.

This approach intends to support two types of client developers:

- Those that have never heard about the OGC. Developers should be able to create a client using the Web API definition without the need to adopt a specific OGC approach. For example, developers no longer need to read how to implement a *GetCapabilities* document, allowing them to focus on the geospatial aspects.
- Those that want to write a “generic” client that can access implementations of OGC API Standards. In other words, common capability and metadata resources are not specific to a particular API.

As a result of following a RESTful approach, OGC API implementations are not backwards compatible with OWS implementations per se. However, a design goal is to define OGC API Standards in a way that an OGC API interface can be mapped to an OWS implementation (where appropriate). OGC API Standards are intended to be simpler and more modern, but still an evolution from the previous versions and their implementations making the transition easy (e.g., by initially implementing facades in front of the current OWS services).

## C.2. Comparison between WMS and OGC API – *Maps*

---

The OGC WMS and WMTS Standards share the concept of a map and the capability to create and distribute maps at a limited resolution and size. In WMS, the number of rows and columns can be selected by the user within limits and in WMTS the number of rows and columns of the response is predefined in the tile matrix set.

The concept of a map used in OGC API Standards is more abstract than the one used in WMS. Read more about the map concept in the Overview.

### C.2.1. Functionality changes from WMS

One important enhancement in the OGC API – *Maps* Standard when compared to WMS is that requests are built out of modular building blocks, allowing different levels of complexity: From

a simple map request with no parameters to a precise selection of collections, spatiotemporal subsets, output dimensions, scale, background settings and so on.

Additionally, to accommodate different client preferences and use cases as well as maintain consistency with other OGC API data access mechanisms such as the *OGC API – Coverages* and *OGC API – Features* Standards, multiple equivalent subsetting mechanisms are supported such as subsetting by bounding box, date and time, generic dimension subset or center point.

Similarly, the ability to explicitly specify a scale denominator as a way to control down-sampling is also defined.

The concept of a display resolution (millimeters per pixel) is also introduced as an alternative to the default 0.28 mm/pixel specified in WMS, enabling a better control on how a server renders symbology suitable for devices and printed maps of different resolutions.

A flexible mechanism to define custom CRS and re-orient the map is also introduced, offering a more comprehensive approach based on coordinate operation (see <https://docs.ogc.org/as/18-005r4/18-005r4.html>, definition 3.1.8) methods, parameters and datums (implying a particular ellipsoid) compared to the AUTO2: namespace for CRSs as specified in the WMS Standard. The AUTO2 namespace is used for “automatic” coordinate reference systems.

Finally, OGC API – Maps can also be used to represent a vertical dimension. This can be done either by returning a 3D data format, by selecting a vertical subset of features to be rendered on a 2D output, or by rendering a vertical profile. Some examples include:

- a 3D map to be displayed on virtual reality devices,
- a 1D graph of NDVI over time for a particular point,
- a 1D graph of a temperature over a vertical profile for a given spatial point,
- intensity of rain along a latitude and vertical dimension,
- a video over a temporal axis,
- a video of temperature representing different elevation levels in different frames of the video.

## C.2.2. Correspondence between WMS map metadata and OGC API Standards

In the WMS Standard, the GetCapabilities response provides some metadata about the server and individual layer sections that inform the client about layer characteristics and some restrictions useful to formulate a successful map query. In the OGC API – Maps Standard, the equivalent metadata is provided via the landing page, the list of collections, the collections details, the API definition, and the service-meta link from the landing page. Implementers of Web APIs are encouraged to make use of the mechanisms provided by other standards of the OGC API family to communicate the relevant metadata to the client.

The following table provides a reference to where some of metadata aspects at the service level are specified.

**Table C.1 – Where some “service” metadata elements are specified**

| NAME IN <SERVICE> WMS<br>1.3                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | WHERE IN THE API              | PROPERTY                                                                                           | SPECIFIED IN                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| Title                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | service metadata <sup>2</sup> | title                                                                                              | OGC API – Common – Part 1                     |
| Name fixed to “WMS”                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | N/A                           |                                                                                                    |                                               |
| Abstract                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | service metadata <sup>2</sup> | description                                                                                        | OGC API – Common – Part 1                     |
| OnlineResource                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | landing page                  | links                                                                                              | OGC API – Common – Part 1                     |
| Keywords                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | service metadata <sup>2</sup> | x-keywords                                                                                         | OGC API – Common – Part 1, Annex B.4          |
| LayerLimit                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | service metadata <sup>2</sup> | x-OGC-limits.maps.max Collections                                                                  | This standard                                 |
| MaxWidth MaxHeight                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | service metadata              | x-OGC-limits.maps.max Width x-OGC-limits.maps. maxHeight x-OGC-limits. maps.maxPixels <sup>1</sup> | This standard<br>Requirements Class “Scaling” |
| Fees                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | N/A                           |                                                                                                    |                                               |
| AccessConstraints                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | N/A                           |                                                                                                    |                                               |
| <sup>1</sup> x-OGC-limits.maps.maxWidth, x-OGC-limits.maps.maxHeight and x-OGC-limits.maps.maxPixels are intended to control the work load of the server by providing limitations in size of the outputs of the subset. width and height parameters in OGC API – Maps (defined in Requirements Class “Scaling”) control the size of the response and its resolution. The core of OGC API – Maps does not provide explicit limits on the size and resolution, but the server is free to respond with an error to avoid work overload. width and height parameters are commonly related to the size of the device screen. The fact that new devices are being built with more and more available display pixels. As such, specifying a reasonable limit on the server side based on today’s technology may become too restrictive for future devices. <sup>2</sup> service metadata may be provided as an extension of the info section of the Open API document as indicated in OGC API – Common – Part 1, Annex B.4 |                               |                                                                                                    |                                               |

The following table provides a reference to where some of layer metadata aspects are specified.

**Table C.2 – Where some “layer” metadata elements are specified**

| NAME IN WMS 1.3 <LAYER>                  | WHERE IN THE API     | PROPERTY                                   | SPECIFIED IN                                                        |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Title                                    | collection response  | title                                      | OGC API – Common – Part 2                                           |
| Name                                     | collection response  | id                                         | OGC API – Common – Part 2                                           |
| Abstract                                 | collection response  | description                                | OGC API – Common – Part 2                                           |
| Keywords                                 | collection response  | keywords                                   | OGC API – Records (Local Resources Catalogue)                       |
| Style                                    | style response       | id                                         | OGC API – Styles – Part 1                                           |
| EX_GeographicBoundingBox                 | collections response | extent.spatial.bbox                        | OGC API – Common – Part 2                                           |
| CRS                                      | collection response  | storageCrs                                 | This standard                                                       |
| BoundingBox                              | collection response  | extent.spatial.storageCrsBbox <sup>1</sup> | This standard                                                       |
| minScaleDenominator maxScale Denominator | collection response  | minScaleDenominator maxScale Denominator   | Possibly in OGC API – Common – Part 2                               |
| Sample Dimensions                        | collection response  | extent <sup>2</sup>                        | This standard                                                       |
| MetadataURL                              | collection response  | link with rel describedBy                  | OGC API Common – Part 2                                             |
| Attribution                              | collection response  | attribution                                | OGC API – Common – Part 2                                           |
| Identifier AuthorityURL                  | collection response  | externalIds                                | OGC API – Records (Local Resources Catalogue)                       |
| FeatureListURL                           | items response       |                                            | OGC API – Features provides this capability                         |
| DataURL                                  |                      |                                            | OGC API – Features, Coverages and EDR provide download capabilities |
| queryable <sup>3</sup>                   |                      |                                            | OGC API – Features, Coverages and EDR provide query capabilities    |

| NAME IN WMS 1.3 <LAYER>                                                                          | WHERE IN THE API | PROPERTY | SPECIFIED IN |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|----------|--------------|
| cascaded <sup>4</sup> noSubsets <sup>5</sup> fixedWidth<br><sup>6</sup> fixedHeight <sup>7</sup> | N/A              |          |              |

<sup>1</sup> In WMS it was possible to specify one bounding box for each supported output CRS. In OGC API – Maps, it is only provided for the native CRS (storageCrs). <sup>2</sup> If extra dimensions are supported the range of values are defined in additional properties of the ‘extent’ of the collection. <sup>3</sup> No equivalent functionality to GetFeatureInfo is provided so this flag is not applicable to OGC API – Maps. Please use the query capabilities of other OGC API Standards instead.

<sup>4</sup> The cascaded XML attribute in WMS is removed because no practical use has been seen. cascaded indicated if a map was generated by the addressed service or by another service assisting the first one. <sup>5</sup> The noSubsets XML attribute in WMS was used to indicate lack of subsetting support. The client will know if the server does not support the *spatial subsetting, date and time* (for temporal subsetting) or *general subsetting* conformance class by inspecting its conformance declaration. <sup>6</sup> The fixedWidth XML attribute in WMS was used to indicate lack of scaling support. The client will know if the server does not support the *scaling* conformance class by inspecting its conformance declaration. <sup>7</sup> The fixedHeight XML attribute in WMS was used to indicate lack of scaling support. The client will know if the server does not support the *scaling* conformance class by inspecting its conformance declaration.

NOTE 1: The supported formats for map resources, or more precisely the media types of the supported encodings, can also be determined from the API definition. The desired encoding is selected using HTTP content negotiation. In addition to the parameters specified by the core, other parameters should be added.

NOTE 2: The opaque XML attribute in WMS was rarely useful and has been removed. This attribute indicated whether the map data represents features that probably do not completely fill space and shows the background opaque (true) or transparent (false).

### C.2.3. No equivalent to *GetFeatureInfo* as part of the OGC API – Maps – Part 1

The OGC Web Map Service *GetFeatureInfo* operation provides the capability for clients to implement some simple level of user interaction with the map. In essence the user can focus on a point on the map (e.g., by clicking on it) and the client will request from the server some textual information related to the elements represented at that point of the map (a functionality sometimes called “query by location”). If the elements represented in the map are simple features, the result should be related to their properties (attributes). If the map represents a coverage, the result should report the value of the coverage in that position (eventually, if the coverage is multidimensional, it could be a e.g., time series graphic or a vertical profile). The format of the actual response is left to the discretion of the server.

*GetFeatureInfo* was first proposed in the 2000 version of the OGC Web Map Service Standard. In that environment *GetFeatureInfo* provided an easy to implement solution for the first step to “queryable” maps.

The new OGC API Standards emerged in a completely different context where most web content is dynamic and JavaScript is now a powerful programming language for the Web. Most simplistic implementations of WMS *GetFeatureInfo* resulted in an imperfect presentation of

the attribute text. Users demand much more than query by location. Now, the integration of the different building blocks defined in OGC API Standards can be provided by default. A map is connected to a collection (or a dataset) that is probably also offered as features with OGC API – *Features* or as coverage with OGC API – *Coverages* – all from the same API landing page. Furthermore, OGC API – *Environmental Data Retrieval (EDR)* also provides a point query, similar to *GetFeatureInfo* as well as much more advanced queries by polygons, trajectories or corridors.

Implementers of map clients are encouraged to implement support for OGC API Standards in addition to OGC API – *Maps* to provide a functionality similar to *GetFeatureInfo*. Instead of building a request to a map point in map coordinates (I, J), implementers should use point narrow bounding boxes in CRS coordinates. For example:

- In OGC API – *Features*, map coordinates should be transformed to Lon,Lat WGS84 in the client side and implement an HTTP GET request to `/collections/{collectionId}/items?bbox=Lon,Lat,Lon,Lat`.
- In OGC API – *Coverages*, map coordinates should be transformed to native coordinates and use `/collections/{collectionId}/coverage?bbox=x,y,x,y` or the equivalent “subset” query.
- In OGC API – *EDR*, map coordinates should be transformed to a CRS that the API supports `/collections/{collectionId}/position?coords=POINT(x y)` or by adding a radius query `/collections/{collectionId}/radius?coords=POINT(x y)&within=20&within-units=km`.

The use of OGC API – *Tiles* and serving vector tiled content directly also makes creating visualizations with query capabilities directly on the client side possible. Since tiled vector data can contain features, their attributes can be presented to the user when clicked, and a different style can be applied to highlight that selected feature.

**NOTE 1:** Even if the OGC API – *Maps – Part 1* does not provide a direct *GetFeatureInfo* equivalent, there is a strong tradition of *GetFeatureInfo* implementations that suggests a possible OGC API – *Maps Standard future “part”* could reintroduce a *GetFeatureInfo* equivalent – if users and implementers demand this capability.

**NOTE 2:** The second most commonly expected function, querying or filtering by the attributes of the features shown in the map, was never introduced in WMS. The same OGC API – *Maps* future “part” could provide the ability to filter by attributes using a CQL2 expression.



D

# ANNEX D (INFORMATIVE) BACKGROUND COLOR CODES

---

## ANNEX D (INFORMATIVE) BACKGROUND COLOR CODES

---

This is the list of [W3C web color names](#) which can be specified instead of a hexadecimal value and it is reproduced in the following table for convenience:

**Table D.1 – Named web color enumeration**

| NAME       | HEXADECIMAL | VALUE (R, G, B) |
|------------|-------------|-----------------|
| black      | 0x000000    | 0, 0, 0         |
| dimGray    | 0x696969    | 105, 105, 105   |
| dimGrey    | 0x696969    | 105, 105, 105   |
| gray       | 0x808080    | 128, 128, 128   |
| grey       | 0x808080    | 128, 128, 128   |
| darkGray   | 0xa9a9a9    | 169, 169, 165   |
| darkGrey   | 0xa9a9a9    | 169, 169, 165   |
| silver     | 0xc0c0c0    | 192, 192, 192   |
| lightGray  | 0xd3d3d3    | 211, 211, 211   |
| lightGrey  | 0xd3d3d3    | 211, 211, 211   |
| gainsboro  | 0xdcfdcfc   | 220, 220, 220   |
| whiteSmoke | 0xf5f5f5    | 245, 245, 245   |
| white      | 0xffffffff  | 255, 255, 255   |
| rosyBrown  | 0xbc8f8f    | 188, 143, 143   |

| Name        | Hexadecimal | Value (R, G, B) |
|-------------|-------------|-----------------|
| indianRed   | 0xcd5c5c    | 205, 92, 92     |
| brown       | 0xa52a2a    | 165, 42, 42     |
| fireBrick   | 0xb22222    | 178, 34, 34     |
| lightCoral  | 0xf08080    | 240, 128, 128   |
| maroon      | 0x800000    | 128, 0, 0       |
| darkRed     | 0x8b0000    | 139, 0, 0       |
| red         | 0xff0000    | 255, 0, 0       |
| snow        | 0xfffffa    | 255, 250, 250   |
| mistyRose   | 0xffe4e1    | 255, 228, 225   |
| salmon      | 0xfa8072    | 250, 128, 114   |
| tomato      | 0xff6347    | 255, 99, 71     |
| darkSalmon  | 0xe9967a    | 233, 150, 122   |
| coral       | 0xff7f50    | 255, 127, 80    |
| orangeRed   | 0xff4500    | 255, 69, 0      |
| lightSalmon | 0xffa07a    | 255, 160, 122   |
| sienna      | 0xa0522d    | 160, 82, 45     |
| seaShell    | 0xffff5ee   | 255, 245, 238   |
| chocolate   | 0xd2691e    | 210, 105, 30    |
| saddleBrown | 0xb4513     | 139, 69, 19     |
| sandyBrown  | 0xf4a460    | 244, 164, 96    |
| peachPuff   | 0xffdab9    | 255, 218, 185   |

| NAME           | HEXADECIMAL | VALUE (R, G, B) |
|----------------|-------------|-----------------|
| peru           | 0xcd853f    | 205, 133, 63    |
| linen          | 0xfaf0e6    | 250, 240, 230   |
| bisque         | 0xffe4c4    | 255, 228, 196   |
| darkOrange     | 0xffff8c00  | 255, 140, 0     |
| burlyWood      | 0xdeb887    | 222, 184, 135   |
| tan            | 0xd2b48c    | 210, 180, 140   |
| antiqueWhite   | 0xfaebd7    | 250, 235, 215   |
| navajoWhite    | 0xffffdead  | 255, 222, 173   |
| blanchedAlmond | 0xffebcd    | 255, 235, 205   |
| papayaWhip     | 0xfffffd5   | 255, 239, 213   |
| moccasin       | 0xffe4b5    | 255, 228, 181   |
| orange         | 0xffa500    | 255, 165, 0     |
| wheat          | 0xf5deb3    | 245, 222, 179   |
| oldLace        | 0xfd5e6     | 253, 245, 230   |
| floralWhite    | 0xffffaf0   | 255, 250, 240   |
| darkGoldenrod  | 0xb8860b    | 184, 134, 11    |
| goldenrod      | 0xdaa520    | 218, 165, 32    |
| cornsilk       | 0xffff8dc   | 255, 248, 220   |
| gold           | 0ffd700     | 255, 215, 0     |
| khaki          | 0xf0e68c    | 240, 230, 140   |
| lemonChiffon   | 0xffffacd   | 255, 250, 205   |

| Name                 | Hexadecimal | Value (R, G, B) |
|----------------------|-------------|-----------------|
| paleGoldenrod        | 0xeee8aa    | 238, 232, 170   |
| darkKhaki            | 0xbdb76b    | 189, 183, 107   |
| beige                | 0xf5f5dc    | 245, 245, 220   |
| lightGoldenRodYellow | 0xfafad2    | 250, 250, 210   |
| olive                | 0x808000    | 128, 128, 0     |
| yellow               | 0xffff00    | 255, 255, 0     |
| lightYellow          | 0xffffe0    | 255, 255, 224   |
| ivory                | 0xfffff0    | 255, 255, 240   |
| oliveDrab            | 0x6b8e23    | 107, 142, 35    |
| yellowGreen          | 0x9acd32    | 154, 205, 50    |
| darkOliveGreen       | 0x556b2f    | 85, 107, 47     |
| greenYellow          | 0xadff2f    | 173, 255, 47    |
| chartreuse           | 0x7fff00    | 127, 255, 0     |
| lawnGreen            | 0x7cf00     | 124, 252, 0     |
| darkSeaGreen         | 0x8fb88f    | 143, 188, 139   |
| forestGreen          | 0x228b22    | 34, 139, 34     |
| limeGreen            | 0x32cd32    | 50, 205, 50     |
| lightGreen           | 0x90ee90    | 144, 238, 144   |
| paleGreen            | 0x98fb98    | 152, 251, 152   |
| darkGreen            | 0x006400    | 0, 100, 0       |
| green                | 0x008000    | 0, 128, 0       |

| NAME              | HEXADECIMAL | VALUE (R, G, B) |
|-------------------|-------------|-----------------|
| lime              | 0x00ff00    | 0, 255, 0       |
| honeyDew          | 0xf0ffff    | 240, 255, 240   |
| seaGreen          | 0x2e8b57    | 46, 139, 87     |
| mediumSeaGreen    | 0x3cb371    | 60, 179, 113    |
| springGreen       | 0x00ff7f    | 0, 255, 127     |
| mintCream         | 0xf5ffff    | 245, 255, 250   |
| mediumSpringGreen | 0x00fa9a    | 0, 250, 154     |
| mediumAquaMarine  | 0x66cdAA    | 102, 205, 170   |
| aquamarine        | 0x7ffffd    | 127, 255, 212   |
| turquoise         | 0x40e0d0    | 64, 224, 208    |
| lightSeaGreen     | 0x20b2aa    | 32, 178, 170    |
| mediumTurquoise   | 0x48d1cc    | 72, 209, 204    |
| darkSlateGray     | 0x2f4f4f    | 47, 79, 79      |
| darkSlateGrey     | 0x2f4f4f    | 47, 79, 79      |
| paleTurquoise     | 0xafeeee    | 175, 238, 238   |
| teal              | 0x008080    | 0, 128, 128     |
| darkCyan          | 0x008b8b    | 0, 139, 139     |
| aqua              | 0x00ffff    | 0, 255, 255     |
| cyan              | 0x00ffff    | 0, 255, 255     |
| lightCyan         | 0xe0ffff    | 224, 255, 255   |
| azure             | 0xf0ffff    | 240, 255, 255   |

| NAME           | HEXADECIMAL | VALUE (R, G, B) |
|----------------|-------------|-----------------|
| darkTurquoise  | 0x00ced1    | 0, 206, 209     |
| cadetBlue      | 0x5f9ea0    | 95, 158, 160    |
| powderBlue     | 0xb0e0e6    | 176, 224, 230   |
| lightBlue      | 0xadd8e6    | 173, 216, 230   |
| deepSkyBlue    | 0x00bfff    | 0, 191, 255     |
| skyBlue        | 0x87ceeb    | 135, 206, 235   |
| lightSkyBlue   | 0x87cefa    | 135, 206, 250   |
| steelBlue      | 0x4682b4    | 70, 130, 180    |
| aliceBlue      | 0xf0f8ff    | 240, 248, 255   |
| dodgerBlue     | 0x1e90ff    | 30, 144, 255    |
| slateGray      | 0x708090    | 112, 128, 144   |
| slateGrey      | 0x708090    | 112, 128, 144   |
| lightSlateGray | 0x778899    | 119, 136, 153   |
| lightSlateGrey | 0x778899    | 119, 136, 153   |
| lightSteelBlue | 0xb0c4de    | 176, 196, 222   |
| cornflowerBlue | 0x6495ed    | 100, 149, 237   |
| royalBlue      | 0x4169e1    | 65, 105, 225    |
| midnightBlue   | 0x191970    | 25, 25, 112     |
| lavender       | 0xe6e6fa    | 230, 230, 250   |
| navy           | 0x000080    | 0, 0, 128       |
| darkBlue       | 0x00008b    | 0, 0, 139       |

| NAME            | HEXADECIMAL | VALUE (R, G, B) |
|-----------------|-------------|-----------------|
| mediumBlue      | 0x0000cd    | 0, 0, 205       |
| blue            | 0x0000ff    | 0, 0, 255       |
| ghostWhite      | 0xf8f8ff    | 248, 248, 255   |
| slateBlue       | 0x6a5acd    | 106, 90, 205    |
| darkSlateBlue   | 0x483d8b    | 72, 61, 139     |
| mediumSlateBlue | 0x7b68ee    | 123, 104, 238   |
| mediumPurple    | 0x9370db    | 147, 112, 219   |
| blueViolet      | 0x8a2be2    | 138, 43, 226    |
| indigo          | 0x4b0082    | 75, 0, 130      |
| darkOrchid      | 0x9932cc    | 153, 50, 204    |
| darkViolet      | 0x9400d3    | 148, 0, 211     |
| mediumOrchid    | 0xba55d3    | 186, 85, 211    |
| thistle         | 0xd8bfd8    | 216, 191, 216   |
| plum            | 0xdda0dd    | 221, 160, 221   |
| violet          | 0x40e0d0    | 238, 130, 238   |
| purple          | 0x800080    | 128, 0, 128     |
| darkMagenta     | 0x8b008b    | 139, 0, 139     |
| magenta         | 0xff00ff    | 255, 0, 255     |
| fuschia         | 0xffff00    | 255, 0, 255     |
| orchid          | 0xda70d6    | 218, 112, 214   |
| mediumVioletRed | 0xc71585    | 199, 21, 133    |

| NAME          | HEXADECIMAL | VALUE (R, G, B) |
|---------------|-------------|-----------------|
| deepPink      | 0xff1493    | 255, 20, 147    |
| hotPink       | 0xff69b4    | 255, 155, 180   |
| lavenderBlush | 0xffff0f5   | 255, 240, 245   |
| paleVioletRed | 0xdb7093    | 219, 112, 147   |
| crimson       | 0xdc143c    | 220, 20, 60     |
| pink          | 0xffc0cb    | 255, 192, 203   |
| lightPink     | 0ffb6c1     | 255, 182, 193   |



E

# ANNEX E (INFORMATIVE) REVISION HISTORY

---

# ANNEX E

## (INFORMATIVE)

### REVISION HISTORY

---

Table E.1

| DATE       | RELEASE     | CONTRIBUTORS                                        | PRIMARY CLAUSES MODIFIED | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2019-03-21 | 0.0         | C. Heazel                                           | all                      | initial template                                                                                                                                                         |
| 2019-06-28 | T15-ER-0.00 | J. Masó                                             | all                      | initial version as work for the OGC API Hackathon in London                                                                                                              |
| 2019-09-09 | T15-ER-0.01 | J. Masó                                             | all                      | Last version in the old document name with D014 and D16 together                                                                                                         |
| 2019-10-01 | T15-ER-0.1  | J. Masó                                             | all                      | first version with the correct ToC as D014                                                                                                                               |
| 2019-10-14 | T15-ER-0.8  | J. Masó                                             | all                      | ready for OGC review                                                                                                                                                     |
| 2019-10-21 | T15-ER-0.9  | J. Masó                                             | all                      | results of the OGC review                                                                                                                                                |
| 2019-10-25 | T15-ER-0.98 | J. Masó                                             | all                      | document ready for the 3 week rule in the Toulouse TC.                                                                                                                   |
| 2019-12-09 | T15-ER-0.99 | C. Reed                                             | various                  | Minor edits to Abstract, Exec Summary, and various other clauses prior to publication as a Public ER                                                                     |
| 2020-01-02 | T15-ER-1.0  | J. Masó                                             | various                  | Final staff review and edits of Testbed-15 engineering report (OGC 19-069).                                                                                              |
| 2023-04-20 | 0.8         | J. Masó, J. St-Louis, B. Hards                      | all                      | Re-organized into several new requirements classes providing additional capability and flexibility, editorial fixes.                                                     |
| 2023-05-02 | 1.0.0rc1    | J. Masó, J. St-Louis                                | various                  | First version of OGC API – Maps submitted to the OAB for review.                                                                                                         |
| 2023-12-22 | 1.0.0rc2    | J. Masó, J. St-Louis, A. Youmans, N. Julià, C. Reed | various                  | Implemented feedback from the OAB. Applied Carl Reed's suggestions. Added examples annex. Improved conformance and overview sections. Complete transition to https URLs. |

| DATE | RELEASE | CONTRIBUTORS | PRIMARY CLAUSES | DESCRIPTION MODIFIED                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------|---------|--------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|      |         |              |                 | Added security considerations section. Clarified scaling and subsetting requirements classes. Added JPEG XL requirements class. Several other improvements. Second version of OGC API — Maps submitted to the OAB for review. |



# BIBLIOGRAPHY

---



## BIBLIOGRAPHY

---

- [1] Jeff de La Beaujardiere: OGC 06-042, *OpenGIS Web Map Service (WMS) Implementation Specification*. Open Geospatial Consortium (2006).
- [2] Joan Maso Pau: OGC 19-069, *OGC Testbed-15: Maps and Tiles API Engineering Report*. Open Geospatial Consortium (2020). <http://www.opengis.net/doc/PER/t15-D014>.
- [3] W3C: Data Catalog Vocabulary, W3C Recommendation 16 January 2014, <https://www.w3.org/TR/vocab-dcat/>
- [4] W3C: Data on the Web Best Practices, W3C Recommendation 31 January 2017, <https://www.w3.org/TR/dwbp/>
- [5] W3C/OGC: Spatial Data on the Web Best Practices, W3C Working Group Note 28 September 2017, <https://www.w3.org/TR/sdw-bp/>
- [6] Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). Link Relation Types [online, viewed 2020-07-09], <https://www.iana.org/assignments/link-relations/link-relations.xml>